حلقة كورس الصوتيات كورس الصوتيات 3 من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش س



Vowel

الصوت المتحرك

Consonant

صوت ساکن

Phoneme

وحدة صوتية

عدد الاصوات المتحركة (<mark>الرئيسية)</mark> في اللغة الإنجليزية 15 <mark>صوت</mark>

/i:/

شكل الفم في هذا الصوت <u>مثل وضعية الابت</u>سامة



AMERICAN ENGLISH

طريقة اخراج هذا الصوت من الفم

اللسان يكون خلف الأسنان ومرتفع وليس ملامس لسقف الفم



كورس الصوتي

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش ٦٨٠



Different Spelling

ee /mi:t/ meet

/fi:1/ feel /si:I/ see /fri:/ free

ea

/ti:m/ team mean /mi:n/ /bi:m/ beam

belief piece

Final e

me **W**e she he

e + consonant + e

these Chinese Peter

Final y

city duty country ability

Ending with ique

unique boutique critique

Word Pairs

Deep sea بحر عميق

تحدث الصينية Speak Chinese

أوراق شجر خضراء Green leaves

أحلام جميلة Sweet Dreams

ثُلاث وجبات Three meals

ى غاية السهولة Extremely easy

حرارة شديدة (ملتهبة) Severe heat

Beans and cheese

الفول والجبن

Sentence Traini

The employees agreed to meet at eight fifteen. الساعة الثامنة والربع

لا تبقى التلفزيون بالقرب من المدفأة . Don't keep the TV near the heater

من السهل للغاية الغش

Please speak to peter about the meeting. يرجى التحدث مع "بيتر" بشأن اللجتماع

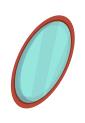
Steve will read the email before he leaves. سيقرأ "ستيف" الإيميل قبل ان يغادر

يمكنك تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب من البداية إلى الاحتراف بالصوت والصورة عبر تطبيقنا المجاني أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل (تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية) سيظهر لك التطبيق



/١/

MIRROR MIRROR ON THE WAL





شكل الفم في هذا الصوت تكون الشفايف في وضعها الطبيعي مفترقة عن بعضهاً قليلاً



اللسان يكون خلف الأسنان ومرتفع وملامس الأسنان العلوية وليس ملامس لسقف الفم









Hit - hit/ His - hiz/ Sip - /slp/

GAME OF QUOTES TO SERVICE OF QUITES TO SERVICE OF Q



in the middle of difficulty lies opportunity.

في خضم العسرة تكمن الفرص.







كورس الصوتي





How do you read the following words?

DIFFERENT SPELLING

Wit - /wit/ Fig - /fig/ Which - /wits/

> sh = /f/ch = /t /

The Answer

Stram Wish Sheep Mix Chip







/۱/

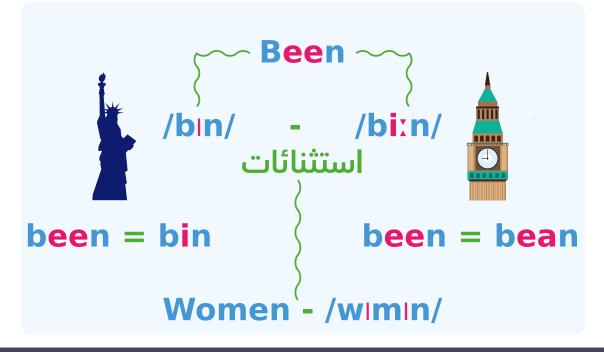
ui

Consonant + y + Consonant

Build - /bild/ Ouit - /kwit/ Quick - /kwik/

Crypt - /kript/ Hymn - /him/

i + Consonant + y + Consonant + ui









كورس الصوتي من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش 🗸



WORD PAIRS

Big city مدينة كبير Drink milk أشرب اللبن This thing هذا الشيء Spring picnic نزهة الربيع Fish and chips

السمك والبطاطس

Winter wind رياح الشتاء

ضع كل كلمة في مكانها المناسب في الحدول المحاور

Beat - Still - Itch - Each Steal - Feet - Sick - Fit **Sheep - Bit - Ship - Seek**



/iː/	/١/
Leave	Live
Feel	Fill
Least	List
He's	His
Sleep	Slip
Cheap	Chip

/iː/	/١/











Still sleepy Feeling ill Is he? **Big deal** These things **Middle East** Little meal **Green pill**



- الأصوات المتحركة \sim

Low Vowels

High Vowels













/ei/



AMERICAN

MIRROR MIRROR ON THE WALL



شكل الفم في هذا الصوت يكون اللسان بعيد عن الشفايف قليلاً



اللسان يكون خلف الأسنان ومرتفع وأطراف اللسان من الجوانب تكون ملامسة للأسنان العلوية









DIFFERENT SPELLING

/ei/

ai

AMERICAN ENGLISH

Rain /rein/ /weit/ Wait Pain /pein/ Aim /eim/

a + Consonant + e

Take /telk/ /keim/ **Came** /selv/ Save /leit/ Late

ay

/sel/ Say Clay /kle/ Spray /spre/ /stel/ stay

C + (L-T-R) = /k/

Clay **Fact** Cry

افتکرها بـ Left To Right

ey

They Grey Obey Survey eigh

Weigh /wei/ Eight /eit/ Freight /freit/ a

April Alien Angel Great

أقل إنتشاراً











ضع صوت كل كلمة في الخانة المجاورة

Sweet	
Way	
Ate	
Dip	
Eight	
Weigh	

The Answer



تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN ENGLISH







GAME OF QUOTES



Take time for all things: great haste makes great waste.



- She complained about her weight but ate the cake anyway. اشتكت من وزنها ولكنها أكلت الكعكة على أي حال
- Jake hates waiting for trains and planes. جاك يكره انتظار القطارات والطائرات
- It rains in April and May. تمطر في إبريل ومايو
- I will stay in the game even though it is late. سأبقى في المباراة على الرغم من الوقت تأخر
- My neighbor from Spain moved away today. جاري من اسبانيا انتقل بعيدا (عزل) اليوم









BEFORE YOU GO

Vowels

Long Vowels

AMERICAN ENGLISH

/iː/ /eɪ/

Short Vowels





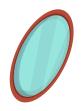






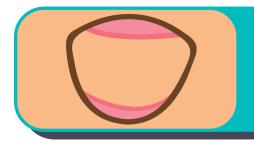


/3/



AMERICAN

MIRROR MIRROR ON THE WALL



شكل الفم في هذا الصوت



اللسان يكون منخفض للأسفل خلف الأسنان









DIFFERENT SPELLING

e

AMERICAN ENGLISH

Get

End

Vet

Shed

/gst/ /end/ /vet/ **/b3**]\

/3/

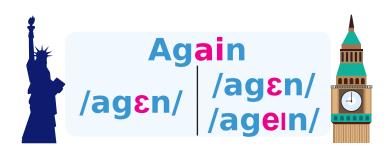
ea

Head **Dead Bread**

/h&d/ **/b3b/** /bred/

استثناءات

Said **/sed/ /SEZ/** Says



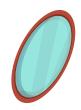




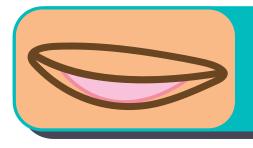




هذ الصوت هو حرف الـ(ث) في اللغة العربية.



IRROR MIRROR ON THE WALL



شكل الفم في هذا الصوت



اللسان يكون ملامس طرف الأسنان العلوية والسفلية معا









DIFFERENT SPELLING

/θ/ Th

Thin Theme Thick Meth

/ten/ /eixm/ /eik/ /**m**ε**θ**/

نحىف سمة/موضوع سميك/غليظ مخدر الميثامفيتامين

Th (vs) S

الكلمة	الصوت	المعنى	الكلمة	الصوت	المعنى	آثر استبدال الصوت
Thin	/θın/	نحيف	Sin	/sın/	ذنب	اه
Theme	/θiːm/	سمة	Seem	/siːm/	يبدو	منر
Thick	/θık/	سیمك	Sick	/sık/	مریض	:a
Meth	/mεθ/	مخدر	Mess	/mɛs/	فوضی	تغير

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN ENGLISH









Better friend Elegant dress Next Wednesday Get better Bend your legs

Game of Quotes



66

AMERICAN

Every exit is an entry somewhere.











ضع صوت كل كلمة في الخانة المجاورة

Pain	
Tell	
Wit	
Main	
Pin	

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

Pen	
Till	
Wait	
Men	
Wet	

The Answer

Pain	/pein/
Tell	/tɛl/
Wit	/wit/
Main	/mein/
Pin	/pɪn/

Pen	/pɛn/
Till	/tɪl/
Wait	/weit/
Men	/mɛn/
Wet	/wɛt/









ضع كل كلمة في مكانها المناسب في الجدول المجاور

Pet - Pit - Met - Met

Lit - Let - Sit - Set

Win - When - Bid - Bed

Hill - Hell

/٤/	/١/

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN ENGLISH





كورس الصو من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



ENGLISI

SENTENCE TRAINER

- Without some extra effort you will never excel.

بدون بعض الجهد الإضافي لن تتفوق أبداً.

- Jenny and her friend had eggs for breakfast.

تناولت چينى وصديقتها البيض على الإفطار.

- I expect this session to end at ten.

أتوقع أن تنتهى هذه الجلسة الساعة العاشرة.

- I see my best friend Fred every seven days.

أرى أفضل صديق لى فريد كل سبعة أيام.











Vowels

High Vowel

Low Vowel



/3/



Consonant



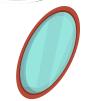








/æ/



AMERICAN ENGLISH

MIRROR MIRROR ON THE WALL



.اللسان يكون ملامس أرضية الفم

Cat /kæt/ Mad /mæd/ /hæd/ Had

Dad is back at last dæd iz bæk æt læst Sand makes him mad sænd meiks him mæd





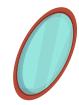




WORD METER

/٤/	/æ/
men	man
said	sad
end	and
then	than
head	had

/a:/



IRROR MIRROR ON THE WALL



شكل الفم في هذا الصوت









DIFFERENT SPELLING

/a:/

a 0

Want /waint/ Watch /waxts/ /da:rk/ Dark

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

> /ha:t/ Hot Not /naxt/ shop /saip/

النطق البريطاني	النطق الامريكي	الكلمة
/wɒnt/	/waːnt/	Want
/hpt/	/haːt/	Hot
/wptʃ/	/waːtʃ/	Watch
/stpp/	/staxp/	Stop
/daːk/	/daːrk/	Dark









GAME OF QUOTES 1



66

AMERICAN ENGLISH

> Never go to a doctor whose office plants have died.

هذ الصوت هو حرف الـ(ذ) في اللغة العربية.

th		الكلمة	
ذ ث		الكلولة	
/ðis/		This	
/ <mark>ðɛm</mark> /		Them	
/ 0 In/		Thin	











PHONIC IRONIC

بدل الرموز الآتية إلى حروف واعد كتابة الجملة.



dæd	wa:z	peIntIng	de door.	ma:m	went out
• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • •



Ta:m ænd Mægi ceIm to plaI

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICA









θri: tʃɪldren ceɪm to ðe house ðeɪ ceɪm to pleɪ wɪð Bɪf	
••••••••••••••	

THE ANSWER

Dad was painting the door. Mom went out.

Tom and Maggie came to play.

Three children came to the house. They came to play with Biff.









BEFORE YOU GO

	/æ/	Wax Taxi	/wæks/ /tæksi/
a	/a:/	Watch Hot	/wa:tʃ/ /ha:t/
	/ɑ/	Watch Hot	/wɒtʃ/ /hɒt/

th	/ð/	This	/ðis/
	/0/	Thin	/θ in /

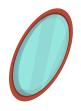












IRROR MIRROR ON THE WALL

الفم يكون مفتوح قليلاً والصوت ينتهي بسرعة











DIFFERENT SPELLING

U

AMERICAN

ENGLISH

/b^t/ But Fun /f^n/ /dr_Am/ Drum

0

Love Done Come

/**I**/\// /dan/ /c/m/

هذا الحرف أحياناً يخرج هذا الصوت

ou

Cousin **Enough** Country /kntri/









// (vs) /d:/



AMERICAN

صوت قصير

Fund /f^nd/ Son /s^n/

/a:/



صوت طویل

Fond Hot

/fa:nd/ /ha:t/









GAME OF QUOTES (2)



66 Love all, trust a few, do wrong to none.

حب الجميع، ثق في البعض، لا تسئ لأحد.







كورس الصو ِ من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش -



SENTENCE TRAINER

- Your younger brother doesn't trust us.

اخوك الأصغر لا بثق بنا.

- I had another fun summer in London.

قضيت صيف ممتع آخر في لندن.

- I have much stuff in the trunk of my truck.

لدي الكثير من الأشياء في صندوق شاحنتي.

- I love the sunny summer months.

أحب أشهر الصيف المشمسة.











اختر الصوت الصحيح لهذه الكلمات

Don

/da:n/

AMERICAN ENGLISH

/dʌn/

Shut

/saxt/ /sat/

Got

/ga:t/ /gʌt/

Doll

/da:ll/ /dʌll/

The Answer

Don	/da:n/
Shut	/ʃʌt/
Got	/ga:t/
Doll	/da:II/











ضع كل كلمة في مكانها المناسب في الجدول

Luck - Lock - Rub **Shot - Done**

///	/aː/











Côme on

Got lûcky

Not enough

Cost much

Fûn jöb

Stop running

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



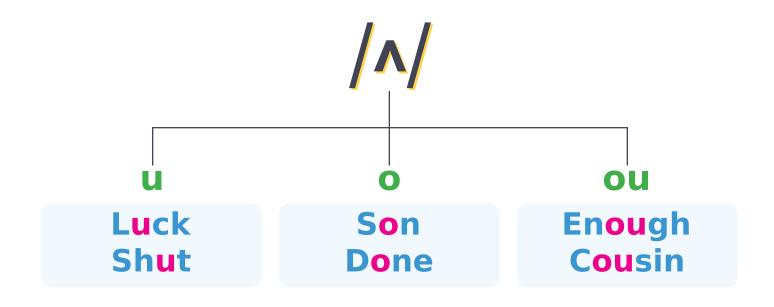
AMERICAN







BEFORE YOU GO





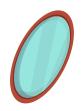








/ช/



IRROR MIRROR ON THE WALL

الشفايف تكون بشكل بيضوي وليست مضمومه











DIFFERENT SPELLING

/ប/

U 00

Good /gvd/ Look /lʊk/ **Book** /bʊk/ Foot /fʊt/

AMERICAN

ENGLISH

Push /pv[/ **Pull** /pʊl/ Full /fʊ// /put/ Put

کلمات تنتهی بـ Ould

Would /wvd/ Could /kvd/ Should /[vd/











اقرأ الجملة التاليه وقم بكتابتها

hi: [ok hiz fot wen wi: lokt

أكتب رمز الكلمات التاليه:

She took this book

The Answer He shook his foot when we looked

(i: tok ðis bok

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN







GAME OF QUOTES A P



66

AMERICAN

Good friends, good books and a sleepy conscience: this is the ideal life

أصدقاء جيدون، كتب جيدة وضمير نائم: هذه هي الحياة المثالية







كورس الصو من قناۃ ذا امیرکان انجلش ہ



Took a look ألقى نظرة

Sugar cookie كعكة السكر

Push and pull ادفع واسحب

Good Looking جميل المظهر

Fully cooked مطهو حتى نضج

Wooden hook معلاق خشبی - کلاب خشبی

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN ENGLISH





كورس الصوت من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



AMERICAN ENGLISH

SENTENCE TRAINER

- Would you help me look for my book?
- The sugar cookies taste good.
- The butcher is a good cook.
- He would read the book if he could.



أكتب رمز الكلمات التاليه:

Look at what we built. It is big and it looks good.











DIFFERENT SPELLING /០ប/

الكلمة	النطق البريطاني	النطق الأمريكي
No	/nəʊ/	/noʊ/
Home	/hอชm/	/hoʊm/
Don't	/dəʊnt/	/doʊnt/

oa

الكلمة	النطق البريطاني	النطق الأمريكي
Road	/rəʊd/	/roʊd/
Coat	/kəʊt/	/koʊt/
Boat	/bəʊt/	/boʊt/

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN







DIFFERENT SPELLING /០ប/

OW

الكلمة	النطق البريطاني <mark>ق</mark>	النطق الأمريكي
Own	/อชท/	/oʊn/
Slow	/slau/	/sloʊ/
Window	/wɪndəʊ/	/wɪndoʊ/

ough

الكلمة	النطق البريطاني	النطق الأمريكي
Though	/ŏəʊ/	/ðoʊ/

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN ENGLISH





كورس الصوت من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش ح



Phone home

AMERICAN ENGLISH

/foun houm/

يتصل بالمنزل

Don't smoke

/dount smouk/

لا تدخن

Gold bowl

/govld bovl/

وعاء الذهب

Drove slowly

/droʊv sloʊli/

قاد ببطیء









AMERICAL

SENTENCE TRAINER

We both hope it's going to snow. bouθ houp **snou**

كلانا نأمل أن تتساقط الثلوج

ου, noυ! [At ðæt 'windou. it iz kould

Oh, no! shut that window. It is cold.

أوه لا! أغلق تلك النافذة. الجو بارد.









GAME OF QUOTES 1 2



66

AMERICAN ENGLISH

> No bird soars too high if he soars with his own wings.

لا يوجد طائر يحلق مرتفعاً جداً، إذا كان اعتماده في التحليق على اجنحته.











أكتب رمز الجملة التاليه:

Look! Wind blows so close. Home sweet home.

The Answer

luk! wind blouz sou blouz, houm swith houm.

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN ENGLISE





كورس الصوتي من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش ١٨٠

DIFFERENT SPELLING /u:/

00

AMERICAN ENGLISH

0

Too /tu:/ /fu:d/ Food **School** /sku:I/ Too /tu:I/

Do /du:/ Who /hu:/ Lose /lu:z/ **Prove** /pru:v/

ue

ew

True /tru:/ /blu:/ Blue

Grew /gru:/ Blew /blu:/ **Drew** /dru:/

U

Rule /ru: |/ Rude /ru:d/









DIFFERENT SPELLING

/d3/

Constant sound

Yes Yam

AMERICAN ENGLISH

/jε**s**/ /jʌm/

Job

/dʒaːr/ /dʒaːb/



New Stew

/nu:/ /stu:/

New Stew

/nju:/ /stju:/

Student /stu:

Student /stju:











Too few

/tu: fju:/

Blue shoes

/blu: \u:z/

New moon

/nu: mu:n/

True value

/tru: vælju:/

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN ENGLISH







GAME OF QUOTES



It's not whether you get knocked down, it's whether you get up.



AMERICAN

66

SENTENCE TRAINFR

The new roof was installed in June. nu: ru:f dzu:n

تم تثبيت السقف الجديد في يونيو.









His blue shoes are really cool. blu: [u:z ku:l

حذائه الأزرق رائع حقاً.

I need proof that you're telling the truth. pru:f tru:0

احتاج إلى إثبات أنك تقول الحقيقة.

I drink fruit juice and eat a lot of soup. fru:t dzu:s su:p

أشرب عصير الفاكهة وأكل الكثير من الحساء.

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN ENGLISI









/℧/	
Full	/fʊl/
Pull	/pʊl/

AMERICAN ENGLISH

/u:/	
Fool	/fu:I/
Pool	/pu:l/

Good food

Full room

Cook stew

Blue book

Two cookies









/34/



RROR MIRROR ON THE WALL



شكل الفم في هذا الصوت



اللسان يكون في منتصف الفم مثل شكلّ الملعقة







كورس الصوتي

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش ١٠

DIFFERENT SPELLING



AMERICAN ENGLISH

er



/h3-/ /m₃·si/ /mʌð³/ /t3-m/

Her Mercy **Mother Term**

/h3:/ /m3:si/ /m/\d3:/ /t3:m/



ear



/h3-d/ /**l**3-n/ /**3**-**0**/

Heard Learn **Earth**

/h3:d/ /l3:n/ **/3:θ/**







كورس الصوتي

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش ١٨٠

DIFFERENT SPELLING



```
/f3-st/
/g3-I/
/f3·m/
```

AMERICAN ENGLISH

or

```
/w3-d/
/w3-i/
/w3-k/
```

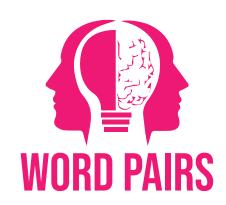
ur











First Person

Purple Shirt

Third Term

Early Bird

Learn German

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN ENGLISH









SENTENCE TRAINER

I will work during the third term. سأعمل خلال فترة ولاية ثالثة.

> Her purple shirt is dirty. قميصها الأرچواني قذر.

She gave birth to a third girl. أنحىت فتاة ثالثة.









GAME OF QUOTES 1



66 Unless you learn to lead, you will always be at the mercy of someone else to guide you.

مِا لم تتعلم القيادة، فستظل دائماً تحت رحمة شخص آخر لإرشادك.

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



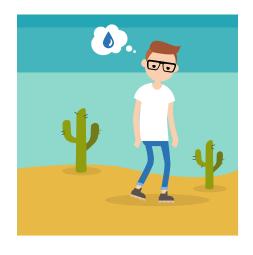
AMERICAN











أكتب رموز الجملة التالية:

He feels that he gets thirsty on Thursday

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على

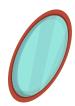


AMERICAN

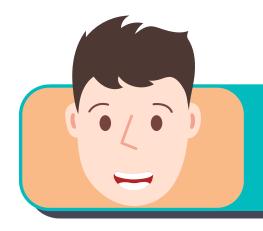




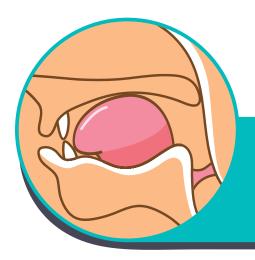




RROR MIRROR ON THE WALL



شكل الفم في هذا الصوت



اللسان يكون مرتفع لأعلى وملامس سقف الفم وطرف اللسان يكون مشير إلى الأسفل









DIFFERENT SPELLING

صوت ال**g** لا ينطق

AMERICAN ENGLISH

/ŋ/

صوت ال<mark>و</mark> ينطق

Hang /hæn/ Tongue /tʌŋ/ Sing | /sɪŋ/

Hungry **Finger** Kangaroo

تمييز الكلمات المنتهيه بـng عن الكلمات المنتهيه بـn

/ŋ/

/n/

Bing | /bɪŋ/ Sing | /sin/ Wing /win/ Tongue /tʌŋ/

Bin Sin Win Ton

/bin/ /sin/ /win/ /txn/









FFERENT SPELLING /n/

Think /θink/



ضع كل كلمة من الكلمات الآتيه في مكانها المناسب في الجدول

Wrong - Singer - Long

/ŋ/	/n/











The Answer

/ŋ/	/n/
Wrong	
Singer	
Long	

/d3/

/3/



AMERICAN ENGLISH

Stop then go

Can't hold

Just go



Hold

ust Jar

Decision Usually









DIFFERENT SPELLING /ai/

AMERICAN

ENGLISH

Fly /flai/ Sky /skai/ Style /stail/

Nice /nais/ Kind /kaind/ /fain/ **Fine** Sign /sain/

igh

Light | /laɪt/ Fight | /faɪt/ Sight /sait/ Night /nait/ ie

/lai/ Lie Tie /tai/ **Tried** /traid/







گورس الصوت من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Lime pies

AMERICAN ENGLISH

/laim paiz/

كعكة الليمون الأخضر

Fly kites

/flar karts/

يطير الطائرات الورقية

Nice try

/nais trai/

محاولة جيدة

Nine lives

/nain laivz/

تسعة أرواح

Bright light

/brait lait/

ضوء ساطع

Fine dining

/fain dainin/

طعام (عشاء) رائع

Ninety nine

/nainti nain/

تسعة وتسعون











AMERICA

SENTENCE TRAINER

Why is the price so high for that design? hai dizain prais wai

The time was set on Friday night. fraidi nait taim

He cried after hiking for fives hours. kaikin faiv kratd









GAME OF QUOTES (2)



66 Don't waste your time with explanations: People only hear what

they want to hear.

لا تضيع وقتك في الشرح: الناس فقط سيسمعون الشيء الذي يريدون سماعه.









HOMEWORK

أكتب الرموز الصوتيه لكل كلمة في القطعة التالية:



His ring was what kept him in good mood and stopped him from getting angry, time after time, day after day.









DIFFERENT SPELLING

/aʊ/

OU

OW

Found /faund/ Loud /laud/ /raʊnd/ Round

Now How Cow

/naʊ/ /haʊ/ /kaʊ/

GAME OF QUOTES



66

AMERICAN ENGLISH

> It is better to keep your mouth closed and let people think you are a fool than to open it and remove all doubt.

الأفضل أن تبقى فمِك مغلقاً وأن تجعل الناس يعتقدون أنك أحمق بدلاً من فتحه وإزالة كل الشكوك.









SENTENCE TRAINER

I doubt that the clown will say something profound. أشك في أن المهرج سيقول شيئاً عميقاً.

There are flowers all around the house.

هناك زهور في جميع أنحاء المنزل.

Is that your spouse in the brown blouse?

هل هذه زوجتك ذات البلوزة البنية؟

The brown cow is near the fountain.

البقرة البنية بالقرب من النافورة.









DIFFERENT SPELLING

/IC\

Toy /toi/ Employ /Imploi/ Enjoy /Ind301/

Join Moist

Noise /noiz/ /dzoin/ /moist/

GAME OF QUOTES (2)



66

AMERICAN

ENGLISH

Don't worry about avoiding temptation. As you get older, it will avoid you.

لا تحمل هم تجنب المغريات. عندما تكبر, المغريات هي من ستتجنبك.









SENTENCE TRAINER

He destroyed the poison by flushing it down the toilet. قام بتدمير السم عن طريق التخلص منه في المرحاض.

Joyce is annoyed and a little paranoid.

چوپس منزعجة وبها القليل من جنون الإرتياب.

I was disappointed with Joy's choice.

شعرت بخيبة أمل من اختيار چوي.









من قناة ذا امیرکان انجلش







Bully

Do you think Tom is a bully?

Well, I always see him bully younger students.



Recess / Break

The students are having a recess now.



Kickball

Playing kickball is so much fun.



Chase

The policeman chased the thief around the block.

The little boy is chased by goats.







You seem mad, little man. Are you alright?











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش







Bullies



Tuesday

At recess, the boys in my class were playing kickball. I walked over to them. "Can I play, too?" I asked. David, a bigger boy chased me away. He pointed at me and laughed. The other boys laughed, too. I felt sad. I didn't want to fight David. I just wanted to play with the boys. I said to David, "Leave me alone!" He didn't listen to me. David makes me sad. He is a bully.

Wednesday

Last night, I talked to my mom about David. She said she would talk to my teacher, Mrs. Brown. Today, my teacher talked to David. Now I can play kickball with the boys. David looked mad, but he didn't say anything to me.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





Walk to

ىسىر الى (مكان)

- I walked to the park.

Walk over to

ىسىر قاطع مسافة نحو (مكان/شخص)

- I walked over to my father.
- I walked over to the shop.

Bully

- He is a bully.

Bullied

(adjective)

- He was bullied.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





A: Choose the best answer.

- 1) What is the reading about?
 - a) A mad mother.
 - b) A boy who was bullied.
 - c) A sad bully.
 - d) A boy who likes recess.

- 2) Who does David make the boy feel?
 - a) Sad.
 - b) Happy.
 - c) Excited.
 - d) Tired.
- 3) What does the boy do about the bully?
 - a) He fights with David.
 - b) He asks his mom for help.
 - c) He runs away from home.

- 4) Who talks to the boy's teacher?
 - a) David.
 - b) His dad.
 - c) His mom.
 - d) Mrs. Brown.

B: Use the given words to complete the sentences.

Q ₁) What were the boys doing at At recess,	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
Q ₂) What did David do? He pointedA (Laughed - me - and - at)	









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Cause

The teacher said, "Boys, stop bullying David. Leave 'him alone"

The teacher said, "David, stop being a bully"

Effect

No I can play kickball with the boys.



David looked mad, but he didn't say anything to me.



Α В C The teacher said. "David, stop playing kickball with the boys!"

The teacher said. "Boys, stop bulling David. Leave him alone"

The teacher said. "David stop being a bully"









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



HOMEWORK

Fill the blanks with the two correct sentences.
1)
2) David, a bigger boy, chased me away.
3)
4) My mom talked to my teacher. Mrs. Brown.
5) My teacher made the bully stop.
a. He pointed at me and laughed.
b. At recess, the boys in my class were playing kickball
c. I got in trouble for fighting.
d. I don't like to play kickball.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





Oats

Did you know horses like to eat oats?



Wheat | Grain

The ants are carrying a grain of wheat.



Cereal

After Noah finishes his breakfast cereal, he always drinks the milk from the bowl.











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





Unit 2

Breakfast Cereal

Breakfast is the first meal of the day. Many people think that it is the most important meal of the day. Parents tell their children to eat a good breakfast. Many people eat cereal for breakfast but, children like to eat sweet things. They want to eat a bowel of cereal only when it tastes sweet. So, some cereal tastes like sugar or candy. This is not good. Too much sugar is bad for you. If a person does not eat a good breakfast, they can get very hungry later. Cereals with a lot of grains in them are very good for children. The best cereal has grains and also tastes great.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





للسؤال عن المعرفة

Did

(سؤال بغرض الاخبار فقط)

- Did you know horses like to eat oats?

(سؤال بغرض الاستفهام ومنتظر إجابته)

- Do you know Michael?
- Do you know how to go home?









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





A: Choose the best answer.

- 1) What is the reading about?
 - a) Eating cereal that is good for you.
 - b) Eating sugar for breakfast.
 - c) Eating a lot of grains.

- 2) Many children like to eat things.
 - a) fancy.
 - b) cold.
 - c) sweet.
 - d) hot.
- 3) Why is it bad to eat cereal that tastes like candy?
 - a) Too much cereal is not good for you.
 - b) Too much milk is not good for you.
 - c) Too much sugar is not good for you.

B: Use the given words to complete the sentences.

Q ₁) A	What do parents tell their children? Parents tell,
Q_2	When do children want to eat a bowel of cereal?
Α	They want to eat a









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Main Idea

Details	

Details	

Cereals with too much sugar are not good for

you.



Eating cereal for breakfast can be good or bad.



It's a good idea to eat cereal for lunch.



Cereals with a lot of grains in them are very good for











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





Fill the blanks with the two correct sentences.
1)
2) Many people eat cereal for breakfast.
3) Many children want to eat a bowl of cereal when it tastes sweet.
4) Cereal with too much sugar in it is not good for you.
5)
a. It is important to eat lunch and dinner.
b. Parents tell their children to eat a good breakfast.
c. Cereals with a lot of grain in them are very good for children.
d. You don't have to eat a good breakfast every day.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



1 of 7



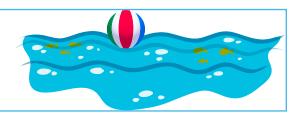
Sink

The boat sank slowly.



Float

The ball is floating on the water.



Shore

Beach

Special

I received a very special treatment on the airplane.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

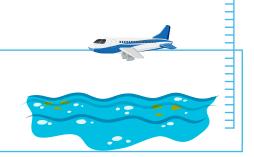




2 of 7

Sea level

The plane is flying 34,000 ft above sea level.



Furthermore

Ted is so lazy, and furthermore, he has no sense of responsibility.



Mud

The car wheels were stuck in the mud.











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



3 of 7



Unit 3

The Dead Sea

The Dead Sea is not a sea. It is actually a big lake. It's a very special lake. No one sinks into the water in this lake. The Dead Sea is between the countries of Palestine and Jordan. Nothing lives in it because the water is so salty. The salt makes the water hold people up. You can lie down on the Dead Sea and float. You never sink into the water. The Dead Sea is the lowest lake in the world. It is about 415 meters below sea level. Its shores are also the lowest dry land in the world. Furthermore, people go to the Dead Sea to improve their health. The salt and mud from the Dead Sea are good for your skin.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



4 of 7



Sink

= go down in water

Drown

= go down in water and die

What? Did you think I was drowning? No, I just enjoy sinking myself into cold water.

Drown

Drowned

Drowned

Sink

Sank

Sunk









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





5 of 7

A: Choose the best answer.

- 1) What is the reading about?
 - a) Palestine and Jordan.
 - b) The Dead Sea.
 - c) The Dead shore.
 - d) Health and food.
- 3) Why doesn't anything live in the **Dead Sea?**
 - a) It is dirty.
 - b) It is very low.
 - c) It is very salty.
 - d) It is a lake.

- 2) In the Dead Sea, you cannot
 - a) swim.
 - b) run.
 - c) sit.
 - d) sink.
- 3) People come to the Dead Sea for their
 - a) friends.
 - b) health.
 - c) meals.
 - d) food.
- B: Use the given words to complete the sentences.

Q ₁) What can you do on the Dead Sea? You
Q ₂) What else is special about the Dead Sea? It is the









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



P	ag	e
6	of	7

Mai	n Idea	

Details	Details	Details

The salt and mud from the Dead Sea are good for your



The Dead Sea is a special lake.



You can lie down on the Dead Sea and float.



It is the lowest lake in the world.











من قناة ذا امپركان انجلش



7 of 7

HOMEWORK

Fill the blanks with the two	correct sentences.
------------------------------	--------------------

- 1) There is a big lake called Dead Sea.
- 2) This big lake is between Palestine and Jordan.
- 3) It is so salty that nothing lives in it.
- 4)
- 5)
 - a. It is the lowest lake in the world.
 - b. A lot of fish live in the Dead Sea is bad for your health.
 - c. The water in the Dead Sea is Bad for your health.
 - d. The salt and mud from the Dead sea are good for your skin.









عورس القراعة

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



1 of 6



Aggressive

My neighbor's dog is really aggressive. Nobody is safe near him.



Hood

Remove the hood, man. I can't see your face.



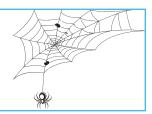
Fictional

Guy is one of my favorite fictional characters.



Prey

Spiders prey on flies and other small insects.



Pack

- A pack of wolves.
- Wolves live in packs.











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



2 of 6





Many people think that a wolf is a dangerous and aggressive animal.



In the fictional story "Little Red Riding Hood" the wolf ate the little girl's grandmother. He also tried to eat the little girl. The girl was afraid of the wolf. She was happy when a nice man came to save her. Many people think that if they see a wolf, the wolf will attack them. This is not true. Most wolves are afraid of people. They attack other, smaller animals. Small animals are the wolf's prey. The wolf in "Little Red Riding Hood" was alone. However, real wolves like to stay in packs. They hunt and live in a group. They do not live alone.









من قناة ذا امیرکان انجلش



3 of 6



لتعديد الصفات لموصوف واحد نضع الأداة (a/an) مرة واحدة فقط

- He is a tall and a handsome man.
- He is a tall and handsome man.











من قناة ذا امپركان انجلش





4 of 6

A: Choose the best answer.

- 1) What is the reading about?
 - a) A bad wolf.
 - b) A scared girl.
 - c) Forests.
 - d) Wolves.
- 3) What did the wolf do to little Red Riding Hood's grandmother?
 - a) He ate her.
 - b) He pushed her.
 - c) He played with her.
 - d) He talked to her.

- 2) Most wolves are of people.
 - a) tired.
 - b) afraid.
 - c) jealous.
 - d) lonely.
- 4) Who saved the little girl in "Little **Red Riding Hood"?**
 - a) A man.
 - b) A wolf.
 - c) Her grandmother.
 - d) A vampire.
- B: Use the given words to complete the sentences.

\mathbf{Q}_1	What	do	many	people	think	about	wolves?	
----------------	------	----	------	--------	-------	-------	---------	--

Many people think that a wolf is a

(and - animal - dangerous - aggressive)

Q₂) What do wolves attack?

They

(animals - other - attack - smaller)









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



5 of 6

Classifying

What do people think about wolves? What is actually true about wolves?

What people think?	What is true?

Wolves attack other, small animals.



A wolf is a dangerous and aggressive animal.



Real wolves like to stay in packs.



Wolves attack people.











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





6 of 6

Fill	the	blan	ks with	ı the	two	correct	sentences.
------	-----	------	---------	-------	-----	---------	------------

- 1) The wolf in "Little Red Riding Hood" ate people.
- 2) But real wolves are afraid of people.
- 3)
- 4) The wolf in the story was alone.
- - a. Most wolves in caves.
 - b. They attack other, small animals.
 - c. However, real wolves like to stay in packs.
 - d. Wolves are very dangerous and aggressive.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





1 of 4

Capital

Rome is the capital of Italy.



Politics

He is very sensitive when it comes to politics.



Humankind

Slavery is one of the worst things in the history of humankind.

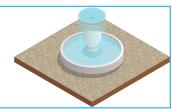
Ruins

The Roman ruins in Lebanon are worth seeing.



Fountain

- Some fountains are just strange.
- The man is a real fountain of knowledge.



Spacious

He bought a spacious home and decorated it very well.



Traditions

He turned his back on the old traditions.











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



2 of 4





Rome



Rome, the capital of Italy, is a city like no other. For more than two millennia, this city was the center of European culture, politics and religion. Walking around the streets of Rome feels like taking a tour through the history of humankind. Rome is filled with ancient churches, Roman ruins, beautiful fountains, spacious squares and expensive shops. There are plenty of tourist attractions in Rome such as the famous Colosseum, The Vatican, and the Trevi Fountain. Most tourists try not to miss visiting the Trevi Fountain because of the coin throwing tradition which some believe brings good luck. Every day, more than 3,000 Euros end up in the Trevi Fountain.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





3 of 4

A: Answer the following question:

Why do people throw coins into the Trevi Fountain?	
	••••••

B: Choose the best answer.

What is this called?

- a) The Colosseum.
- b) The Vatican.
- c) The Trevi Fountain.











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





عيميم بالإشيامتياتك عجام قبليهاا منهي فرطاع أالرعميم

4 of 4

صحے الاحظاء لئي هدہ اطہارہ واعد حمایتھ بسخل صحیح
Rome is filled by ancient churches, roman ruin, beautiful fountains, spacious squares and an expensive shops.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





1 of 5

Pacific Ocean

I've never been to any island in the Pacific Ocean.

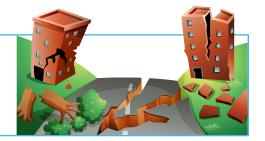
Continent

Asia is the largest continent and Africa comes second.



Earthquake

The city was almost destroyed by an earthquake.



Wise

Early to bed, early to rise, makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise.











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



2 of 5





Mu



There are many islands in the Pacific Ocean. Do you know Tahiti and Easter Island? Some people think that these islands were part of a large continent a long time ago. The name of this land was Mu. A great earthquake shook it. Mu sank into the sea. Only small islands were left. Some people say that human life began on Mu. They also say that people on Mu were wise and clever. They knew thing people nowadays don't know. Other people say that the stories of Mu are not true. However, it is fun to think about Mu. If a wise group of people lived on Mu, did they make computers? Did they travel to the moon? Did they know answers we still don't know today?









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





3 of 5

A: Choose the best answer.

- 1) What is this article about?
 - a) A lost continent.
 - b) An earthquake.
 - c) An island that sank.
 - d) A lost planet.
- 3) What began on Mu, according to some people?
 - a) Small islands.
 - b) Human life.
 - c) Strange people.
 - d) Small animals.

- 2) (A/An) hit the land of Mu.
 - a) earthquake
 - b) traffic
 - c) storm
 - d) continent
- 4) Some people think the stories about Mu are not
 - a) funny.
 - b) scary.
 - c) true.
 - d) wrong.

B: Use the given words to complete the sentences.

Q ₁)	What did human life begin?
A	Some people say that
	(on - human - Mu - life - began)
Q ₂)	What else do people say about Mu?
Q ₂) '	What else do people say about Mu? They also say that









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Page 4 of 5

Main Idea	

Details	Details	Details

a Other people say that the stories of Mu are not true.

They also say that people on Mu were wise and clever.

b

Some people think Mu is a lost land that sank into the oscan.

C



Some people say that human life began on

d

Mu.











من قناة ذا امپركان انجلش





5 of 5

				• • •			sentences.
-111	tha		IDNVC	WITH	tho	CORRACT	CANTANCAC
	LIIC	$\mathbf{\mathcal{O}}$	IGIINƏ	VVILII	LIIC	COLLECT	3511611653

- 1) Some people think Mu is a lost continent that sank into the ocean.
- 2) Only small islands were left.
- 4) They also say that people on Mu were wise and clever.
- 5)
 - a. The weather on Mu was cold and snowy.
 - b. Some people say that human life began on Mu.
 - c. Mu is still a big continent.
 - d. No one knows if the stories are true.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





1 of 5











Venus







Earth





My Very Educated Mother Just Served Us Noodles.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش









Flying to Saturn for vacation

Many people go on vacation to different parts of the world. They like to travel to exciting places. However, what about going to another planet for vacation? That would be a new and amazing adventure! If you go to Saturn for your vacation, you will be surprised. Everything is very different. The wind on Saturn is strong. It will push you around. You will feel like you are flying. Also, Saturn is made of gas. Saturn is far from the sun, but the gas is hot. This is because Saturn has a very hot interior. This heats up the planet. Do you want to go to Saturn for vacation?









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





3 of 5

A: Choose the best answer.

- 1) What is this article about?
 - a) Traveling to the moon.
 - b) Going to Saturn.
 - c) Talking about the Earth.
 - d) Learning about stars.
- 3) The wind on Saturn is very
 - a) beautiful.
 - b) cool.
 - c) strong.
 - d) still.

- 2) Saturn is Earth.
 - a) close to
 - b) similar to
 - c) different from
 - d) smaller than
- 4) What heats up Saturn?
 - a) The sun.
 - b) Hot water.
 - c) The Earth.
 - d) Its hot interior.

B: Use the given words to complete the sentences.

Q ₄) Would you like to go to another planet for vacation?
W ₁) Would you like to go to another planet for vacation:
1,

Yes, that would be

(amazing - a new - adventure - and)

Q_a) Why is the gas on Saturn hot?

(has - interior - Saturn - very - a hot)









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Page 4 of 5

Main Idea	
	_

Details	Details	Details

a Saturn has strong wind and is made of gas.

b Saturn has a very hot interior.

Saturn is far from the Sun, but the gas on it is hot.

C



Traveling to Saturn would be a new and amazing adventure.











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





5 of 5

Fill the blanks with the two correct sentences.
1) What if you traveled to Saturn?
2) Everything there is very different.
3) The strong wind will push you around .
4)
5) This is because Saturn has a very hot interior.
a. Saturn is far from the sun, but the gas is hot.
b. That would be a new and amazing adventure!
c. Many people have traveled to Saturn.
d. The sun heats up the planet.









عورس القراعة

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





1 of 5

Mysterious

He was being very mysterious about where he was going.



Gallery

The gallery charges an entrance fee.



Protection

Her coat gave her protection from the rain.



Tribute

- -Thousands of people stood in silent tribute to the dead president.
- -This song is a tribute to John.











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش











Mona Lisa Mystery

Leonardo da Vinci started painting the Mona Lisa in 1503. It took him many years to paint this picture. The Mona Lisa is now the world's most famous painting. What is so special about the Mona Lisa? The painting shows a young woman with a mysterious smile. After five hundred years, people still want to know what she is thinking. The country of France keeps this painting in an art gallery called the Louvre. Because it is so famous, this painting now needs protection. In 1911, a gallery worker hid the Mona Lisa under his coat. He stole the painting and gave it to a friend. His friend copied the painting a few times. Each time, he sold the copy and called it the real Mona Lisa. This friend hid the real Mona Lisa in a box. He kept it there for two years.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



3 of 5



Then, when he tried to sell the painting, the police caught him. The Mona Lisa soon went back to the gallery. There are some funny tributes to the Mona Lisa. These tributes make the Mona Lisa even more famous. An artist from Japan made a Mona Lisa from pieces of burned toast. Also, a lego fan used over thirty thousand lego blocks to create Mona Lego. What would Leonardo da Vinci think of that?











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



4 of 5



A: Choose the best answer.

- 1) It took Leonardo da Vinci many to paint the Mona Lisa.
 - a) years
 - b) helpers
 - c) months
 - d) models
- 3) Which of the following is Not true about the Mona Lisa?
 - a) The country of France owns the painting.
 - b) A policeman bought the painting.
 - c) There are many kinds of copies.
 - d) It was in a box for two years.

- 2) To steal the Mona Lisa, an art gallery worker
 - a) took it out of its frame.
 - b) dropped it out of a window.
 - c) covered it with another painting.
 - d) hid it under his coat.
- 4) What can you guess about the Mona Lisa?
 - a) It is now more famous than ever before.
 - b) It was well protected before 1911.
 - c) It is worth about fifteen million dollars.
 - d) It was completed in 1503.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



5 of 5

	Causes																																																	
									•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•					•	•	•	•	0 (•	•		•	•	•	•	D (
		•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	0 (•	• •	D
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	D 4	P 4	Þ
	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	• •	D
•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	0 (•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	D (D
ľ	•	•	۰	۰	۰	•	•	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	•	• •			•	•	۰	۰	۰	•		0		۰	۰	۰	۰	۰	•	•	•	D 4	D 0	

Effect

The Mona Lisa now needs increased protection

The copies were sold a few times.

Police caught the person who stole the Mona Lisa.

A Mona Lisa was made out of burned toast.

Α

В

C

D

False copies of the painting were made by the thief's friend.

An artist in Japan made a tribute to Mona Lisa.

The painting was stolen in 1911.

Someone tried to sell the painting.









A. Skill Presentation

A simple sentence has one subject-verb group, and it expresses one complete idea.

- © I brought flowers to Rodrigo.
- · We danced and sang.

A compound sentence has at least two subject-verb groups, and it expresses at least two complete ideas. These ideas must be related.

Sandra and I liked the flowers, and Camilo enjoyed the chocolates.

In a compound sentence, two complete ideas are joined by a conjunction. Some common conjunctions are and, but, and so. And connects similar ideas, but connects contrasting ideas, and so connects a cause with its result. When you write, put a comma before the conjunction.





1. Read the paragraph. How many compound sentences are there? Check (V) the correct answer and then write the sentences number/numbers.

Adae started a new job in the United States last year. She learned many new customs. People shake hands when they meet, and they make eye contact. People often call each other by their first names. On Fridays, the people in her office dress casually. Today is Friday, but Adae forgot. She is wearing a suit. There is a meeting today. Adea wants to be polite, so she arrives at the meeting early. There is a new employee at the meeting. The new employee is from a different country, so Adae will give her some helpful tips.

a. There are three compound sentences. Sentences:
b. There are four compound sentences. Sentences:
c. There are five compound sentences. Sentences:



B. Over to You

2. Read the sentence in the chart. Decide if it is a simple or compound sentence. Check (\lor) the box in the correct column.

	Simple Sentence	Compound Sentence
1. Luciana brought roses to the dinner party.		
2. Wei gave her host a small present.		
3. Chang bowed, and Michael introduced him.		
4. Pedro is traveling to China, so Martin is teaching him Chinese.		
5. Megan does not put her arms on the dinner table.		
6. Martin is going to the party, but Hana is staying at home.		
7. In South Korea, many people wrap gifts in red or yellow paper.		



	3		=	37
5.	Over	LO	You	

	Simple Sentence	Compound Sentence
8. Lily wanted to be polite, so she took chocolates to her host.		
9. Jin is bringing roses to the host, and Jorge is bringing a plant.		
10. Daniel invited his friends to a dinner party.		
3. Check! 1. A simple sentence has one and it expresses one complete idea 2. A compound sentence has at leas groups. It expresses at least two co	st	group, subject-verb that are
3. Remember to use the correct a when you write compoun	and sentences.	d





Practice	
1. Check (\vee) the correct answer/answers for each iter	и.
1. Choose the compound sentence/sentences. a. In Lebanon, people bring a dessert to a dinner party b. Rashid lives in Lebanon, and works for a large company c. Rashid likes dessert, so Mariam gave him a cake.	
 2. Choose the simple sentence/sentences. a. In Russia, the host serves the oldest gust first. b. Tanya's grandfather is the oldest, so Anton will serve him first. c. Tanya's grandfather is 72, and Tanya is 23. 	
3. Choose the compound sentence/sentences. a. Adriana took a cake to the party, and Pablo took soda b. Pablo brought soda to the party for Adriana. c. In Lebanon, people bring a dessert to a dinner party	





4. Choose the simple sentence/sentences.
a. Mariela wants to eat at a restaurant, but her friends want to cook.
b. Mariela prefers Italian food to French food, and her friends like it, too.
C. Mariela's friends want to cook dinner together.
5. Choose the compound sentence/sentences.
a. Antonio smiled, and Ravi said, "Good morning."
b. Antonio said good morning to his neighbor.
c. Antonio smiled and talked with his neighbor.
6. Choose the simple sentence/sentences.
a. Ronaldo speaks Chinese, but Clara only speaks English.
. Ronaldo and Clara studied English and computer science.
c. Ronaldo finished college, so he does not have classes with Clare.





2. Read the paragraph and answer the questions.

*Crystal vested Colombia last year, so she learned many new customs. *She was invited to someone's home for dinner, and she had a very enjoyable evening. *Crystal brought some flowers with her. *She shook hands with her host. *She said "Good evening." *Her host told her where to sit at the table. *She tried all the food, but Crystal left a small amount of food on her plate to be polite. *She stayed for two hours after dinner. *It is not polite to "eat and run." **Here Colombian hosts were happy they invited her, and Crystal was happy she went.

- How many simple sentences does the text have? _____
 Sentences: (Numbers) _____
- 2. How many compound sentences does the next have?
 _____ Sentences: ______
- 3. What conjunctions are used?
- 4. Are commas used before the conjunctions?





The Answer

B. Over to You

1-

b. Sentences: 3, 6, 9, 11

2-

- 1. Simple Sentence
- 2. Simple Sentence
- 3. Compound Sentence
- 4. Compound Sentence
- 5. Simple Sentence
- 6. Compound Sentence
- 7. Simple Sentence
- 8. Compound Sentence
- 9. Compound Sentence
- 10. Simple Sentence

3-

- 1. subject, verb
- 2. two, related
- 3. conjunction, comma

C. Practice

1-

- 1. b, c
- 2. a
- 3, a
- 4. C
- 5. a
- 6.6

9...

- 1. six Sentences: 3,45,8,9
- 2. four Sentences: 1 ,2 ,7 ,10
- 3. so, and, but, and
- 4. yes



A. Skill Presentation

A prepositional phrase is a preposition followed by a noun. We use prepositional phrases to talk about location and time.

- o In Saudi Arabia
- At night

Most prepositional phrases of time and location can go at the end of the sentence. We can put them at the end.

- 6 There was a heavy rain in Egypt.
- 6 She will come back on Friday.

We can also start the sentence with a prepositional phrase. It can come in the beginning. If you start a sentence with a prepositional phrase, remember to use a comma.

- In Egypt, there was a heavy rain.
- o On Monday, she will come back.



A. Skill Presentation

Auxiliary verbs (helping verbs) are things like - am, is, are, was, were.

An auxiliary verb needs another verb in the sentence.

- She was playing.
- 6 He is doing homework.
- @ Judy and Leyla were watching a movie.
- @ You are calling Tom!

The words (am - is - are - was - were) if they have another verb after them, we call them, auxiliary verbs. No other verb, not auxiliary but, main verbs.

- The holiday is on Monday.
- Mark is my best friend.
- The meeting is on Wednesday.

Sentences with (be) as the main verb, the prepositional phrase can't go first, it must go after (be).



B. Over to You

 Read the paragraph. How many prepositional phrases are there? Underline them and check (V) the correct answer.

Arlington National Cemetery is in Arlington, Virginia. It has graves of soldiers. There are about 270,000 graves. Four million people visit the cemetery every year. Many people come on Memorial Day. They think it is important to remember soldiers who died. The cemetery usually closes at 7:00 p.m. In the winter, it closes earlier. Some people use maps, and some people take tours.

- a. There are four prepositional phrases.
- b. There are five prepositional phrases.
- c. There are seven prepositional phrases.



c. Practice

- Make sentences. Write the words in the correct order.
 Don't forget to add a period.
 - 1. ended on November 11, 1918 World War I
 - 2. died a Canadian solider at 10:58 a.m.,
 - 3, in Le Havre, France he died
 - 4. the war at 11:00 a.m. ended
 - 5. celebrate Remembrance Day in Canada, they
 - 6. started Remembrance Day in 1919.
 - 7. there is a mount of silence at 10:58 a.m.,
 - 8. they in other places soldiers who died remember





2.	Rewrite the	sentences	that are	incorrect.	If	the
	sentence is	correct, wi	rite CORI	RECT.		

- 1. At my house the party was.
- 2. On Monday, the holiday is.
- 3. We at noon are meeting tomorrow.
- 4. Adele in the United States lives.
- 5. My friend lives on E 50th Street.
- 6. At school, Stephen is today.
- 7. In 1868, the first Memorial Day was.
- 8. We finish school on June 26.



The Answer

B. Over to You

Arlington National Cemetery is in Arlington, Virginia. It has graves of soldiers. There are about 270,000 graves. Four million people visit the cemetery every year. Many people come on Memorial Day. They think it is important to remember soldiers who died. The cemetery usually closes at 7:00 p.m. In the winter, it closes earlier. Some people use maps, and some people take tours.

C. Practice

1-

- World War I ended on November 11 ,1918.
- 2. At 10:58 a.m., a Canadian soldier died.
- 3. He died in Le Havre, France.
- 4. The war ended at 11:00 a.m.
- In Canada, they celebrate Remembrance Day.
- 6. Remembrance Day started in 1919.
- 7. At 10:58, there is a moment of silence.
- 8. They remember soldiers who died in other places.

2-

- 1. The party was at my house.
- 2. The holiday is on Monday.
- 3. We are meeting tomorrow at noon.
- 4. Adele lives in the United States.
- 5. CORRECT
- 6. Remembrance Day started in 1919.
- 7. The first Memorial Day was in 1868.
- 8. CORRECT



A. Skill Presentation

A simple sentence has a subject and a verb, and it expresses a complete idea.

6 Food helps you.

Some simple sentences have two verbs.
The verbs in this case, express two actions done by the same subject.

If you have one subject and a verb, and then you have one more subject and a verb.

That you can call a compound sentence.

If you have one subject and two verbs, that's a simple sentence with two verbs.

6 Mark sings and plays the piano.



Skill Presentation

In a simple sentence with two verbs, you can join the two verbs with a conjunction. Some common conjunctions are and, or.

6 He eats dinner and drinks coffee late at night. prepositional phrase subject verb object conjunction verb



If both verbs are negative, use the words do not only once. Also, in this case, it's better to use the conjunction (or) not (and).

We can say:

· They don't buy or cook healthy food.

Instead of:

o They don't buy and don't cook healthy food. X





A. Sum up

- If there are two verbs in a sentence and they both express an action done by the same subject, we still call that a simple sentence.
- 2. In simple sentences with more than one verb, we can connect the verbs using a conjunction like and or or.
- 3. If both verbs in the sentence are negative, use the words do not only once. Don't repeat the negative.



B. Over to You

1. Read each sentence in the chart. Decide if it has one or two verbs sentence. Check (\lor) the box in the correct column.

	One Verb	Two Verbs
1. Carrots keep eyes healthy.		
2. Blueberries are good for the skin.		
3. Healthy oils help the skin.		
4. Water cleans the skin.		
5. Some food is bad for the skin.		
6. Most people need about eight hours of sleep.		
7. Julia does not sleep or eat well.		
8. She drinks coffee and eats dinner late at night.		
9. Steven sleeps well at night.		
10. He does not drink or eat anything after 7:00 p.m.		





2. Read the paragraph. How many verbs are there? Circle them and check (\lor) the correct answer.

Some drinks benefit your body. Milk builds strong bones and helps your teeth. Green tea prevents some diseases and helps your heart. Water is very good for your body. It cleans the skin. Some drinks are bad for you. Cola does not help your body or benefit your skin.

- a. There are seven verbs.b. There are nine verbs.c. There are ten verbs.
- 3. Check!
- 1. A simple sentence can have _____ verbs. The verbs express two actions by the same subject.
- 2. You can join the ____ with and or or.
- 3. When the two verbs are _____, write do not, does not, or did not only ____. Use the conjunction _____.



c. Practice

- 1. Make sentences. Write the words in the correct order. Don't forget to add a period.
 - 1. eats Linda healthy food and drinks
 - 2. or play sports do not exercise I
 - 3, to work and walks takes a bus Evan
 - 4. after 8:00 p.m. does not eat Joanna or drink
 - 5. exercise a lot we and eat well
 - 6. Ms. Lee yoga and studies teaches
 - 7. help the skin healthy oils and add weight
 - 8. tai chi Sheila and does plays basketball



C. Practice

2. Read each sentence in the chart. Write the verbs and the conjunction in the boxes in the correct columns.

	Verbs	Conjunction
1. Felix loves coffee and drinks it every day.		
2. Danila does not eat meat or drink soda.		
3. They bought tea and gave me some.		
4. It is important to include a lot of water in your diet, and doctors recommend six glasses a day.		
5. Food can affect your health and how you learn.		
6. We do not eat or buy take-out food.		
7. Pam does not cook fish or eat it.		
8. Milk builds strong bones and helps your teeth.		
9. My father does not sleep well or eat properly.		
10. Connie does not drink or eat anything on Thursday.		



The Answer

B. Over to You

- 1. one verb
- 2. one verb
- 3, one verb
- 4. one verb
- 5. one verb
- 6. one verb
- 7. two verbs
- 8, two verbs
- 9. one verb
- 10. two verbs

C. Practice

1-

- 1. Linda eats and drinks healthy food.
- 2. I do not exercise or play sports.
- 3. Evan takes a bus and walks to work.
- 4. Joanna does not eat or drink after 8:00 p.m.
- 5. We exercise a lot and eat well.
- 6. Ms. Lee teaches and studies yoga.
- 7. Healthy oils help the skin and add weight.
- 8. Sheila plays basketball and does tai chi.

2-

Conjunction
and
or
and
and
and
or
or
and
or
or

2-

Some drinks benefit your body. Milk builds strong bones and helps your teeth. Green tea prevents some diseases and helps your heart. Water is very good for your body. It cleans the skin. Some drinks are bad for you. Cola does not help your body or benefit your skin.

3-

- 1. two
- 2. verbs
- 3. negative, once, or



Skill Presentation

If we have two sentences and they both talk about the same idea, we can say they're related.

- She reads books. She is very smart.
 Blue is my favorite color. I don't like black.

If we have two sentences with two completely different ideas, don't connect them with a conjunction.

 \circ Mark is sick, but the teacher likes my answers. X

As mentioned, compound sentences express at least two complete related ideas.

If they ideas are not related, we can't join them, we can't connect them with a conjunction. We should keep them as two simple sentences. We shouldn't make a compound sentence out of them.

John is from America. He says apartment.

They are related because John is from America, he calls that place an apartment. If he were not from America, he would say flat not apartment.



A. Skill Presentation

The three main conjunctions that are frequently used are:

But is used to join contrasting ideas.

She eats a lot, but she doesn't get fat.

So is used to connect a cause and result.

• John is from America, so he says apartment.

And is used to connect two similar ideas.

 Cleaning the streets makes them look good, and it makes people happy.



1. Read the paragraph. How many conjunctions are there? Circle them and check (\vee) the correct answer.

Teenagers sometimes speak differently from adults, and they use special words. This helps teens feel unique, and it makes them feel independent. Some of these words are old, but others are very new. For example, teens first started saying cool in the 1940s, and they still say cool today. In the past, teens used other special word, but many of them are not used today. In the 1960s, teens said groovy, but they do not use that word now. Teenagers want to be unique, so they often use different words from adults.

- a. There are five conjunctions.
- b. There are seven conjunctions.
- c. There are ten conjunctions.



- 2. Match the two parts of the compound sentences.
 - Pop is a common word in Michigan,
 - 2. My aunt lived in Boston,
 - 3. Some people call cola soda,
 - 4. Ballet is a borrowed word in English
 - 5. Groovy was used in the 1960s,
 - 6. Bus is an international word,
 - 7. I do not understand this word,
 - I could not find the definitions in the dictionary,
 - Sometimes I use a dictionary,

- a....and others call it tonic.
- b. ...so I looked them up online.
- c. ...and it comes from French.
- d....so many people understand it.
- e....and sometimes I use a thesaurus.
- f...but it is rare in California.
- but now it is almost never used.
- h...but I know how to pronounce it.
- i...so she says tonic.



	Sept.		cke!
465	€	ABB	
Draw di			

	compound						complete
ic	deas. The id	leas must	be	to	each	other.	

2.	The ideas car	n be connected	with and, b	ut, or	SO.
	connects two	similar ideas.	connect	s two	contrasting
	ideas.	connects a cau	se and a re	sult.	



1. Read each sentence in the chart. Decide if the word in colored is a correct or incorrect conjunction. Check (V) the box in the correct column.

	Correct Conjunction	Incorrect Conjunction
1. English gives words to other languages, and other languages add words to English.		
2. I call this sandwich a hero, so my friend calls it a hoagie.		
3. English has many words from French, so it has some from German.		
4. We say elevator in the United States, but they say lift in England.		



c. Practice

	Incorrect Conjunction
5. I did not know the definition, but I used the dictionary.	
6. Americans say stroller, but they say pram in England.	
7. I say you guys, so my friends from the South say y'all.	
8. My roommates are learning English, and they are studying Chinese at school.	
9. I lived in the Midwest, so I use words that are common is that part of the country.	
10. Bravo is a foreign word, and we use it in English.	



c. Practice

2	Read each sentence and complete it with the correct
	conjunction (and, or, but, or so).
	1. Some people speak fast, they speak clearly.
	2. He is from the South, he says y'all.
	3. American use different words, they speak differently, too.
	4. We wanted to see more of the city, we didn't have time.
	 English has many words from other languages, they are considered English words now.
	6. Many French words are now international, they are used all over the world.
	7. Some words are common, they are used in several languages.
	8. People with a drawl stretch out the vowel sounds, they speak slowly.
	9. Origami was originally a Japanese word, it is

10. Most people use abbreviations when they text, they also use special words.



The Answer

B. Over to You

1-

Teenagers sometimes speak differently from adults, and they use special words. This helps teens feel unique, and it makes them feel independent. Some of these words are old, but others are very new. For example, teens first started saying cool in the 1940s, and they still say cool today. In the past, teens used other special word, but many of them are not used today. In the 1960s, teens said groovy, but they do not use that word now. Teenagers want to be unique, so they often use different words from adults.

2-

4	C
1.	1

2. i

3. a

4. c

5. 9

6. d

7. h

8.6

9. e

3-

- 1. two, related
- 2. And, But, So

C. Practice

1-

1. correct conjunction

2. incorrect conjunction

3. incorrect conjunction

4. correct conjunction

5. incorrect conjunction

6. correct conjunction

7. incorrect conjunction

8. correct conjunction

9. correct conjunction

10. incorrect conjunction

2-

1. but

e, so

3, and

4. but

5. but

6. so

7. but

8. so

9. but

10, and





What is a paragraph?

A paragraph is a group of sentences about one topic.

 This is my friend, Dave. He is from the UK. He likes reading and swimming.

What is the topic sentence?

The topic sentence tells us the main idea of the paragraph. The topic sentence usually comes at the beginning of the paragraph.

 Chris is famous for his life story. He used to be poor and homeless. Now he is a successful businessman, writer, and speaker.





What are supporting sentences?

Supporting sentences give us more information about the topic sentence.

- They usually follow the topic sentence, they come after it.
- They must be related to the main idea.

For example: Let's say we're writing a paragraph about "Why the sun is so important?".

The sun is so important in our lives. (TS) The sun provides heat to Earth. (SS) Without the sun, Earth would be a cold wasteland. (SS)

(TS) >> Topic Sentence

(SS) >> Supporting Sentences



- 1. Match each topic sentence (1-5) with the correct supporting sentence (a-e).
 - 1. Viola Vaughn is a social entrepreneur.
 - 2. The schools distribute free school supplies.
 - 3. Each school has an after-school program.
 - 4. Viola's business grew quickly.
 - 5. Dr. Vaughn has a traveling library that goes to small towns once a month.
 - a. They give away notebooks, paper, and pens.
 - b. There are over 2,500 girls now.
 - c. She gives education to girls living in poverty.
 - d. Every afternoon, teachers tutor the girls.
 - e. Local children can check out books for free.



2. Read the topic sentence and the first supporting sentence. Then read each sentence in the chart, and decide if it is related to the main idea or not. Check (\lor) the box in the correct column.

Topic Sentence: Jack Weil started a Western-style clothing business in 1946.

First Supporting Sentence: He became one of the oldest businessmen in the United States.

	Related	Not Related
1. Weil named the company Rackmount Ranch Wear.		
2. People in big cities do not wear Western-style clothing.		
3. The store's most popular product was a cowboy-style shirt with snaps.		
4. Weil's granddaughter had a dog named Rocky.		
5. Rackmount Ranch Wear distributed the shirts all over the world.		
6. Many cowboys live in Colorado.		
7. Weil worked at the store every day until he was 107 years old.		
8. People over 80 should not work.		



3. Check!
1. A is a group of sentences about one topic.
sentences in a paragraph give more about the topic sentence. They are directly related to the main
C. Practice
1. Read each topic sentence. Check (V) the best supporting sentence.
1. Jack Weil named his company Rackmount Ranch Wear. a. He chose the name because he loved the Rocky Mountains. b. He lived in Colorado.
2. Weil was one of the oldest businessmen in America. a. Famous actors wore his shirts. b. He worked until he was 107 years old.
3. Jack Weil enjoyed talking to customers. a. For example, he liked to talk about his granddaughter's dog, Rocky. b. People bought many shirts.
4. Rackmount Ranch Wear sold Western-style clothing a. The most popular product was the cowboy-style shirt with snaps. b. Not many businessmen wear Western-style shirts.
5. Fred DeLuca had a new concept when he opened the first Subway restaurant. a. He was born in 1948. b. He wanted to use very fresh food.
6. The Subway restaurant company is very successful. \[a. There are over 33,000 locations in 92 countries. \[b. They make bread every day.





- Match each topic sentence (1-5) with two correct supporting sentences (a-j).
 - 1. My friend has a great business idea.
 - 2. Students donate used books at our college bookstore.
 - 3. Many children living in poverty don't get new clothes very often.
 - 4. My group is working on a report about children in Africa.
 - 5. After two years, the store had no more money.
 - a. They sometimes don't have food, too.
 - b. The store gives the books to students in need.
 - c. They did not make a profit.
 - d. She wants to sell coffee in our local park
 - e. We will also make suggestions about how we can help them.
 - f. Their families have very little money.
 - g. So they had to shut down.
 - h. Maybe she'll even sell cakes and cookies, too.
 - i. They also supply pens and pencils.
 - j. We are going to write about all the facts we find.





The Answer

B. Over to You

1-

- 1, c
- 2. a
- 3, d
- 4. b
- 5. €

2-

- 1. related
- 2. not related
- 3. related
- 4. not related
- 5. related
- 6, not related
- 7. related
- 8. not related

3-

- 1. paragraph
- 2. Supporting, information, idea

C. Practice

1-

- 1. a
- 2. b
- 3. a
- 4. a
- 5. b
- 6. a

2-

- 1. d, h
- 2. b, i
- 3. a, f
- 4. e, j
- 5. c, 9



A. Skill Presentation

As mentioned,

- A paragraph usually starts with a topic sentence that tells us the main idea.
- The topic sentence can be followed by many supporting sentences.
- Supporting Sentences give us more information about the topic sentence.

Concluding Sentences

There are two things you need to remember about concluding sentences:

- 1. Concluding sentences come at the end of paragraphs.
- 2. A concluding sentence can repeat the main idea of the paragraph using different words.

For example: Let's say we're writing a paragraph about the famous Television personality, "Julia Child".

Julia Child was well known for French Cooking. (TS)
She had a TV show called Baking with Julia. (SS) She wrote a cookbook about dinner parties. (SS) Julia Child was famous for making French food. (CS)



Now, let us take a real paragraph to practice on.

Steve Jobs was always interested in technology. (TS)
He studied technology in high school. (SS) After class, he often visited the Hewlett-Packard company. (SS) People at the company gave speeches about technology. (SS) These speeches inspired him. (SS) Technology was always a big part of Job's life. (CS)

look at the concluding sentence again. Technology was always a big part of Job's life.

And look at the topic sentence again, Steve Jobs was always interested in technology.

Aren't these two sentences the same? Yeah, they deliver the same idea but in a different set of words.

Notice that there is an indent at the beginning of the first sentence in the paragraph.

Traditionally we leave about 7 spaces before each new paragraph. It's also accepted if you don't do that. It depends on your professor or teacher.



- 1. Match each topic sentence (1-5) with the correct concluding sentence (a-e).
 - 1. Julia Child had a good time going places with her mother and father.
 - 2. Julia Child had a TV show called Baking with Julia.
 - 3. Julia Child wrote a cookbook about dinner parties.
 - 4. Julia Child and her husband were happily married for almost 50 years.
 - 5. Julia Child's kitchen is on display at a museum in Washington, D.C.
 - Today, visitors can see where the French chef cooked and worked.
 - b. The Childs had a long and happy marriage.
 - c. She gave a lot of baking ideas on this TV program.
 - d. Her book had many ideas about meals to make for friends.
 - e. Julia enjoyed traveling with her parents.



2. Read each paragraph. Check (\lor) the correct concluding sentence.

- Steve jobs was always interested in technology. He studied technology in high school. After class, he often visited the Hewlett-Packard company. People at the company gave speeches about technology. These speeches inspired him. Many years later, the company gave him a job, Jobs learned a lot about computers at Hewlett-Packard. He eventually helped start a famous computer company.
 - \square a. He met his future business partner at Hewlett-Packard.
 - □ b. Technology was always a big part of Jobs's life.
 - \square c. He got married in 1991 and had four children.
- Peter Buffett had loving parents and a normal childhood. He was not spoiled by his wealthy father. Peter's father is Warren Buffett, one of the richest people in the world. Peter lived with his family in Omaha, Nebraska. They did not have a big house or expensive things. His parents taught him to respect other people and to do work that he loved.
 - a. When he was young. Peter Buffett's life was similar to many other children's.
 - \Box b. When he got older, Peter became a musician and an author.
 - c. Peter's father still lives in the family house in Omaha.



3. Check!

- 1. The concluding sentence is usually the _____ sentence in a paragraph.
- The concluding sentence can _____ the main idea of the paragraph using _____ words.



- 1. The sentences from these paragraphs are in the wrong order. Read each topic sentence, then find and check (\lor) the correct concluding sentence.
- 1. As a child, my cousin spent six hours on the computer every day.
 - \square a. He was always watching movies online and sending e-mails.
 - □ b. He did not get enough exercise.
 - C. My cousin spent too much time at the computer when he was young.
 - d. He even ate at the computer.
- 2. Ms. Lopez's daughter enjoyed learning with computers.
 - \square a. She often played math games online.
 - b. She thought online learning was fun.
 - \square c. She did many reading and spelling activities, too.
 - d. She did online activities to learn history, science, and even business.
- Bill Gates does not allow his daughter to spend much time on the computer.
 - \square a. Gates thinks it is important to limit his children's computer time.
 - b. When she was 10, she could spend 45 minutes a day playing on the computer.
 - C. Gates only let her visit certain websites.
 - d. She was also allowed to use the computer to do homework.



2. Choose the correct concluding sentence for each topic sentence. Write a or b.

- 1. Julia Child's first TV show was very popular.
 - a. Julia Child was on several shows.
 - b. Many people enjoyed Julia Child's first show.
- 2. Children should be active.
 - a. Young people need to play and run.
 - b. Even teens need exercise.
- 3. Our community benefits from having two schools.
 - a. One is for older students, and one is for younger students.
 - b. The advantage to the community is having more than one school.
- 4. Our company sells office supplies.
 - a. They can provide for all your office needs.
 - b. It is a big business with many stores.
- 5. Some wealthy people have enough money to live without working.
 - a. Rich people have enough money to live without working.
 - b. The solution would be to have a lot of money and not go to work.
- 6. The students do volunteer work on weekends.
 - a. Many students help clean up the trash from beaches.
 - b. They enjoy helping others in their free time.





The Answer

B. Over to You

- 1-
 - 1. €
 - 2. c
 - 3, d
 - 4. 6
 - 5. a
- 2-
 - 1. b
 - 2. a
- 3-
- 1. last
- 2. repeat, different

C. Practice

- 1-
 - 1, c
 - 2. 6
 - 3, a
- 2_
 - 1. b
 - 2. a
 - 0 L
 - 4 n
 - 5. a
 - 6. b





What's the difference between phrases, clauses, and sentences?

A phrase is a group of words with mo subject, verb and it doesn't express a complete thought.

- A scary lion.
- 6 The lost cat.
- The fastest animal.
- on the table.
- 6 For a while.

A clause is a group of words with subject and verb.

Note: If the clause doesn't give a complete thought. We call it a dependent clause.

A dependent clause is not a complete sentence.

- Because he found it.
- When she called.
- Jack felt happy.

An independent clause is a complete sentence.

Because she came late.

A sentence is a group of words.





Phrase Vs Clause

Phrase

Group of words

No (sub) and (v)

No complete thought

o In the afternoon.

A Dependent Clause

Doesn't make sense by itself and needs more information.

6 When they arrived.

Clause

Group of words

There is (sub) and (v)

May give complete thought

- o When they arrived.
- o Janice came to work.

An Independent Clause

can stand alone and give a complete thought.

6 Janice came to work.



1. Re	ad each	sentence	in the	chart.	Decide	if it	is a	phrase	or	a clause
Chec	k(V) the	box in th	e corre	d colu	umn.					

	Phrase	Clause
1. In the morning.		
2. The loud dog.		
3. After she waited.		

2. Read each sentence in the chart. Decide if it is a dependent clause or an independent clause. Check (V) the box in the correct column.

	Dependent	Independent
1. They ate dinner.		
2. Sarah didn't eat breakfast.		
3. While you were waiting.		



The Answer

1. Read each sentence in the chart. Decide if it is a phrase or a clause. Check (V) the box in the correct column.

	Phrase	Clause
1. In the morning.	V	
2. The loud dog.		[<mark>√</mark>
3. After she waited.		√

2. Read each sentence in the chart. Decide if it is a dependent clause or an independent clause. Check ($\sqrt{}$) the box in the correct column.

	Dependent	Independent
1. They ate dinner.		√
2. Sarah didn't eat breakfast.		V
3. While you were waiting.	V	





A complex sentence has two parts:

- An independent clause is one part of the complex sentence.
- A dependent clause is the other part.

When you join a dependent clause and an independent clause, you make a complex sentence.

Michael travels a lot because he is a businessman.

Note: to join dependent clause and independent clause, we need to use a conjunction.

We talked about conjunctions like (and - for - so - but). These conjunctions are not used with complex sentences. They are used with compound sentences.



As mentioned, compound sentences are sentences with two subject-verb groups.

@ I woke up late, so I didn't catch the bus.

In compound sentences, we can use conjunctions like (and, for, so, but, etc.)

However, in complex sentences, we don't use these words. We use another kind of conjunctions. Words like (because - when - if - after) they are used with complex sentences.

- 6 Mona learned Turkish because she works in Turkey.
- Dave will spend more time in Cairo if he travels to Egypt again.
- Steve follows Egyptian customs when he visits Egypt.

Do we always start the sentence with an independent clause?

No, you can start the sentence with a conjunction followed by the dependent clause.

- @ Because she works in Turkey, Mona learned Turkish.
- If he travels to Egypt again, Dave will spend more time in Cairo.
- 6 When he visits Egypt, Steve follows Egyptian customs.

Notice if we start with the conjunction, we follow that up with the dependent clause and we add a comma between the clauses.



1. Read each clause in the chart. Decide if it is independent or dependent. Check (\lor) the box in the correct column.

	Independent Clause	Dependent Clause	
1. Because he is in a meeting.			
2. When she visited China.			
3. Paolo speaks Portuguese and Russian.			
4. Jin shakes Natalia's hand.			
5. Because her mother is from Quebec.			
6. Because it shows bad manners.			
7. Abena nods her head.		AE	
8. If he does not understand.			

2. Check!

- 1. A _____ sentence has an intendent clause and a dependent clause joined by a _____ such as because, if, or when.
- 2. Both _____ have a subject and a verb, but a dependent clause does not ____ a complete idea. An independent clause expresses a complete idea.



3. Check (\lor) The complex sentence in each item.

- a. Paula looked at Ana.
 b. Paula looked at Ana, but Ana did not look at Paula.
 c. Ana studied Spanish and spoke it in Ecuador.

 a. Ana studied Spanish, but Tomas studied French.
 b. Ana met Tomas when they were in college.
 c. Paula and Ana looked at each other when they met.

 a. Carlo felt guilty, so he crossed his arms.
 b. Carlo and Tina argued today.
 c. Carlo is sad because he argued with Tina.

 4a. Antonio bowed to Kazuo when they met.
 b. Antonio and Kazuo bowed to each other.
 c. Antonio introduced himself, and Kazuo bowed.
- a. Marisa and Ken shook hands at the meeting.
 b. Marisa shook Ken's hand, and he introduced himself.
- C. Marisa shook hands with Ken when they met.





A. Underline the dependent clause in each complex sentence.

- People should learn Turkish customs if they want to work in Turkey.
- 2. Jim learns new customs when he travels.

1-

- 3. I didn't like the movie because I didn't like the message in it.
- 4. Face-to-face conversations are usually clearer because it is easier to tell if someone doesn't understand you.
- 5. Your listener will relax if you smile when you talk.

B. Now underline the independent clause in each complex sentence.

- 6. Many people make gestures with their hands when they speak.
- 7. It is important to learn about the local customs when you do business.
- 8. Body language is an important part of any conversation because people often respond to what you do more than to what you say
- 9. In job interviews, it is important to look directly at interviewers if you want them to trust you.
- 10. Remember that communication is not just speaking because your eyes, hands, and body also "say" a lot.





2- Read the text. How many complex sentences are there? Check (V) the correct answer.

Pedro will move to Vietnam if he finds a job there. Now he is trying to learn more about Vietnamese culture. He attends Vietnamese language classes three times a week. He is also reading a book about Vietnamese business customs. According to the book:

- · He should bring a small gift to business meetings.
- · He should shake hands with people when he meets them.
- He should hold his business card in both hands when he gives it to someone.
- *He should make appointments in advance.
- He should get to know people first if he wants to build business relationships with them.
- 1ºIt will be easier to meet new people if he makes contacts before he goes to Vietnam.
- 11He should learn at least a few words of Vietnamese.
- 12He should never point at another person in Vietnam.

a.	There	are two	complex	sentences.	Sentences:	-
10.0				W		

- 🗆 b. There are three complex sentences. Sentences: _____
- C. There are five complex sentences. Sentences:



The Answer

B. Over to You

1-

- 1. dependent clause
- 2. dependent clause
- 3, independent clause
- 4. dependent clause
- 5. independent clause
- 6. dependent clause

2-

- 1. complex, conjunction
- 2. clauses, express

3-

- 1. c
- 2. b
- 3, c
- 4. a
- 5. c

rraceu

A

- 1. if they want to work in Turkey
- 2, when he travels
- 3. because I didn't like the message in it
- 4. because it is easier to tell if someone doesn't understand you
- 5. if you smile when you talk

B.

- 6. Many people make gestures with their hands
- 7. It is important to learn about the local customs
- 8. Body language is an important part of any conversation
- 9. In job interviews, it is important to look directly at interviewers
- Remember that communication is not just speaking

2-

Sentences: 1, 6, 7, 9, 10





Coordinating Conjunctions

These conjunctions (and - or - so - but - nor - yet - for) we call them coordinating conjunctions and they connect two parts of the same value.

They're easy to remember if you can just think of the acronym "FANBOYS".

The same value means they connect:

- · Words with words.
- Phrases with phrases.
- · Clauses with clauses.
- Sentences with sentences.

Here are some example sentences using the coordinating conjunctions

- 6 Matt and Dan are my friends.
- @ You can come in the morning or in the afternoon.
- @ I like cats but my friend likes dogs.





Subordinating Conjunctions

We use subordinating conjunctions to join parts that are not of the same value.

They join a higher rank with a lower rank.

@ People should learn English if they want to work in England.

ヴ independent clause

dependent clause

Why we use subordinating conjunctions?

Because dependent and independent clauses they are not of the same value, they are not equal.

One of them is higher and the other is a subordinate.





Why do we have to use a subordinating conjunction? Is it only to show the importance of the independent clause?

We use subordinating conjunctions for two main reasons:

- 1. To show the importance of one part of the sentence over the other part.
- 2. To show the relationship between the two parts.

A relationship could be something to show:

Time - words like (when - after - before - while)

@ Jack left the house before his father woke up.

Place - words like (where - wherever)

Mark doesn't eat where he works.

Condition - words like (if - unless)

6 If you need help, you only need to ask.

Reason, cause or effect - words like (because - since - so that)

@ Jane can't wait to go out because she feels bored.





What is the difference between a clause and a sentence?

Every simple sentence is an independent clause.

Why? Because it is a group of words that includes a subject and verb and it can stand alone and gives a complete thought.

6 John likes drawing.

Two independent clauses are a compound sentence.

Why? Because it has two subject-verb groups.

6 John likes drawing, and Lisa likes cooking.

Note: don't forget to use a conjunction.

- Independent + conjunction + independent = a compound sentence
- · One independent clause = a simple sentence
- One dependent clause + one independent clause, and vice versa
 a complex sentence





Run-On Sentence

A run-on sentence has two independent clauses with no comma or conjunction to join them.

6 Fred likes French he learns it daily. X

Notice: This is grammatically incorrect, because we didn't use a comma or a conjunction.

We should say Fred likes French, and he learns it daily.



	<u> </u>			3 7
B.	Over	10	You	

1.	Read each	item iv	the o	chart.	Decide	if it	is con	rect o	r if il	t is
a	run-on sen	tence.	Check	< (√) l	the box	in th	ne cor	rect a	olum	n.

	Correct Sentence	Run-On Sentence
1. I want to be an engineer, but I hate math.		
2. Mr. Larmore loves to travel he became a travel agent.		
3. My brother is a good soccer player, so he wants to play soccer in college.		
4. We like animals, but we do not want a pet.		
5. My father is a successful writer he has written three books.		
6. I enjoy collecting books and I would like to be a librarian.		
7. Frank studied music in college, and he has a job as a drummer.		
8. Jan's hobby is painting she will paint a picture for the art show.		

2. Check!

- 1. A _____ sentence has two or more independent clauses combined with no comma or no ____.
- 2. Avoid run-on sentences when you write. Make _____ sentences, or use a ____ with a conjunction.

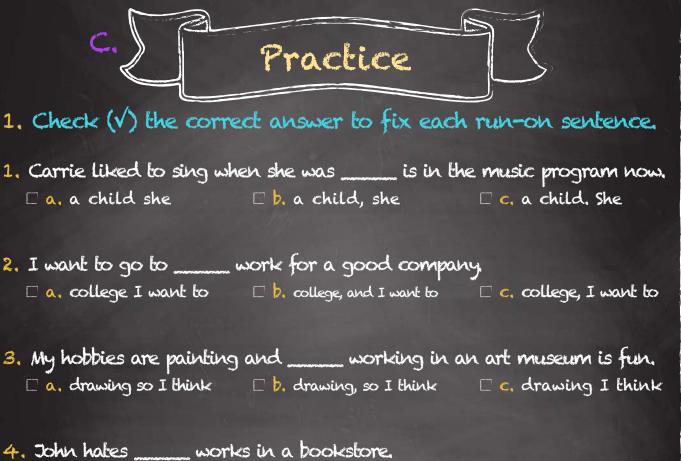




3. Check (V) the option that is not a run-on sentence for each item.

- a. I love watching movies, so I decided to study acting. □ b. I love watching movies so I decided to study acting. C. I love watching movies I decided to study acting. a. Sonny likes rules and he is a good police officer. b. Sonny likes rules, and he is a good police officer. C. Sonny likes rules he is a good police officer. 3a. Michael is good at fixing cars. He is a mechanic. b. Michael is good at fixing cars he is a mechanic.
- C. Michael is good at fixing cars and he is a mechanic.
- 4a. Lee studied law but he did not become a lawyer.
- □ b. Lee studied law he did not become a lawyer.
- C. Lee studied law, but he did not become a lawyer.
- 5- \square a. I wanted to work with children I became a teacher.
- D. I wanted to work with children. I became a teacher.
- C. I wanted to work with children so I became a teacher.





5. Carson loves ___ will study it more in college.

\[a. \text{history he} \quad \begin{aligned} \blue \text{b.} \text{history so he} \quad \begin{aligned} \cdot \text{c.} \text{history. He} \end{aligned}

 \square a. reading, but he \square b. reading but he \square c. reading, he

6. Donna wants to be a ____ does not want to work hard. \Box a. doctor, but she \Box b. doctor she \Box c. doctor but she



- 2. Match each paragraph (A-D) with the correct description (1-4).
- __1 Correct paragraph
- 2 Includes run-on sentences
- ____3 Incorrect use of conjunctions
- 4 Mistakes with commas
- A. Baseball is Scott Boras's career. He played baseball in college, but after college, he became a professional. Baseball became his job, so later, Boras developed a knee problem. He had to stop playing. However, his interest in baseball did not end. He became a sports agent, but he started a business. It was successful, and his company helps baseball players make more money. Now, Boras works with many famous baseball players. Baseball is his life.
- B. Baseball is Scott Boras's career. He played baseball in college. After college, he became a professional and baseball became his job. Later, Boras developed a knee problem so he had to stop playing. However, his interest in baseball did not end so he became a sports agent. He started a business. It was successful. His company helps baseball players make more money. Now, Boras works with many famous baseball players. Baseball is his life.





- 1 Correct paragraph
- 2 Includes run-on sentences
- ___3 Incorrect use of conjunctions
- 4 Mistakes with commas
- C. Baseball is Scott Boras's career. He played baseball in college, and after college, he became a professional. Baseball became his job, but later Boras developed a knee problem. He had to stop playing. However, his interest in baseball did not end. He became a sports agent. He started a business. It was successful. His company helps baseball players make more money, so now Boras works with many famous baseball players. Baseball is his life.
- D. Baseball is Scott Boras's career he played baseball in college. After college, he became a professional. Baseball became his job. Later, Boras developed a knee problem. He had to stop playing. However, his interest in baseball did not end. He became a sports agent he started a business. It was successful. His company helps baseball players make more money. Now, Boras works with many famous baseball players baseball is his life.





The Answer

B. Over to You

1-

- 1, correct sentence
- 2, run-on sentence
- 3, correct sentence
- 4. correct sentence
- 5. run-on sentence
- 6, run-on sentence
- 7. correct sentence
- 8. run-on sentence

2-

- 1. run-on, conjunction
- 2. two, comma

3-

- 1. a
- 2. 6
- 3. a
- 4. c
- 5. b

C. Practice

1-

- 1, c
- 2. 6
- 3. b
- 4.0
- 5. C
- 6. a

2-

- 1, C
- 2. D
- 3. A
- 4. B



من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





نىة - قرار Resolution

E.g.

لقد عقدت النية على تعلم الإنجليزية في 2018. 2018 aresolution to learn English in 2018.

أهداف/قرارات السنة الجديدة New year's resolutions.

إيه أخبار الـ...؟ How's the... coming?

E.g. How's the food coming? كيف أخبار الأكل؟

إيه أخبار الصورة؟ How's the photo coming?







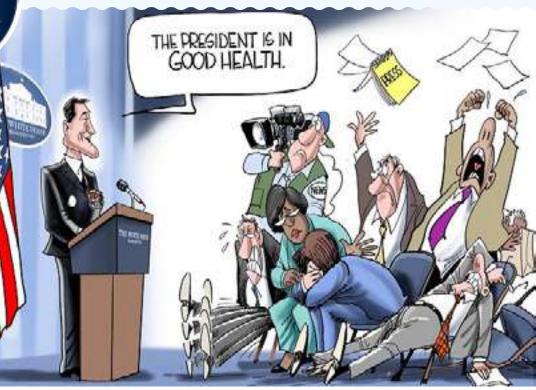


ENGLISH

شفرة أعريكا

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





صحة Health

He is in good health. هو بصحة جيدة

مؤتمر صحفی Press conference

متحدث الرسمي Spokes person

The spokes person said that the president was in good health.

المتحدث الرسمى قال أن الرئيس كان بصحة جيدة









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





یمدح - یثنی علی Praise

یمدح - یثنی علی (مجاملة) Compliment

یمدح - یثنی علی - یغازل - تمدح Flatter

إطراء - مديح زائف Flattery

شخص Guy

E.g. اسمع یا شیء أنت، مش شغلك Listen, guy. That's none of your busines



Rickshaw











المستوى الثاني

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



المغامرة Adventure

Refugees اللاجئين

العمالة - الأيدي العاملة Labour









شفرة أمريكا من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



In 2018 I will quit smoking. That's my resolution.

في 2018 سأتوقف عن التدخين. هذا قراري

How's your homework coming, son? Do you need help?

ما أخبار الواجب يا بني، هل تريد المساعدة؟

My friend was really sick last week but he is in good health now.

كان صديقي مريض جداً الأسبوع الماضي ولكنه بصحة جيدة الأن

Mr. President, there's no need to hold a press conference for that, people don't care.

سيدي الرئيس، لا داعي لعقد مؤتمر صحفي لأجل هذا الناس لا يهتمون

You can't win me with flattery, you will have to show me some actions. لن تستيطع أن تكسبني بالمديح، سيكون عليك أن تريني بعض الأفعالُ

Businessmen love nothing more than cheap labour.

لا يحب رجال الأعمال شيء أكتر من العمالة الرخيصة ً









حلقة المستوى الثاني

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Where are you?	أين أنت؟	اين أنا؟ Where am I?
	Where was I?	أنا كنت فين؟









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





'WE'RE <mark>STILL</mark> MORE POPULAR THAN LINDSAY LOHAN!"

يوافق - يرضى عن Approve

l really don't approve of this. انا حقاً لا أرضي عن هذا

الرضا - القبول Approval

رضاك يمثل كل شيء بالنسبه إلى ___ Your approval means the world to me.

مستقل Independent

Mary is a strong, independent woman. ماری هی أمرأة قویة مستقلة

أنظر إلى الجانب المشرق Look on the bright side

شعبی - ذو شعبیة Popular

Among Between

إذا لم تسمى الأطراف

E.g. It's popular among teenagers.

إذا سميت الأطراف مهما كان العدد

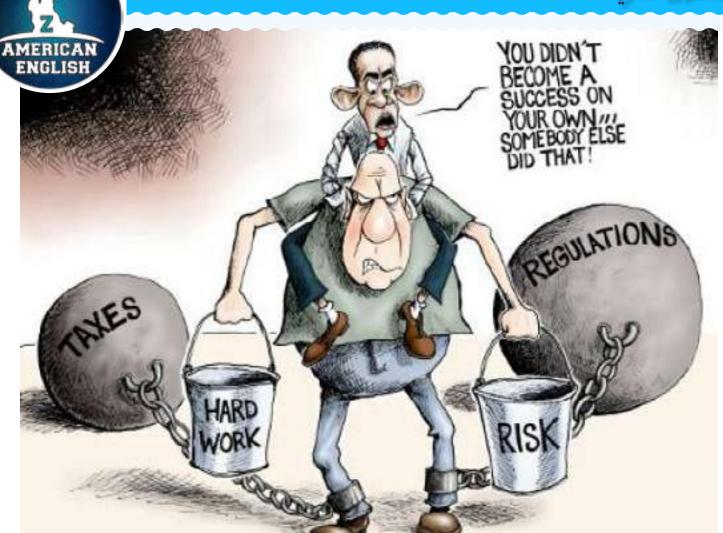
This is a secret between Ahmed, Mohamed and Khaled. أنها شائعة بين المراهقين

هذا الكلام سر بين أحمد، محمد و خالد









الضرائب Taxes	اللوائح - القوانين التنظيمية Regulations
المخاطرة Risk	Hard work العمل الشاق
	D 16 .

On your own = By yourself بنفسك

Do your homework on your own, I'm not helping you.

أعمل واجبك بنفسك - لن أساعدك

هو ناجم He is success هو ناجم









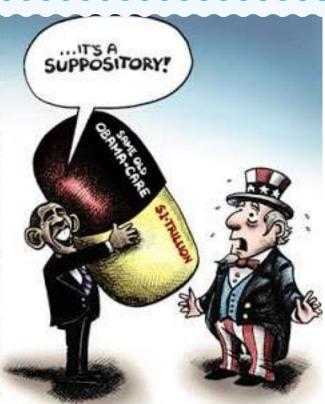
من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



المستوى الثاني

MY FELLOW AMERICANS. I'VE LISTENED TO YOUR OMPLAINTS! I UNDERSTAND THAT YOU DON'T WANT GOVERNMENT HEALTHCARE SHOVED DOWN YOUR THROATS! SO I'VE GREATED A NEW COMPROMISE PLAN!





یشتکی Complain

هم دائماً یشتکون They always complain.

الشكوى Complaint

She will not listen to your complaint.

هي لن تنصت إلى شكواك

یشتکی من Complain about

E.g.

Be a man and stop complaining about the weather. کن رجلاً وتوقف لا تشتکی من الجو

الرعانة الصحنة Health care / Health-care

دفعة قوية Shove = Strong push

إجبار شخص على فعل شيء رغماً عنه !Shoved down your throats

E.g.

I told you I don't want to but your car, stop shoving it down my throat.

لقد أخبرتك إني لا أريد شراء سيارتك - توقف عن إجباري

يصنع Create = make

طل وسط Compromise

لبوس Suppository







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش











مستشار التوجيه Guidance counselor				
الإرشاد Guidance	یرشد - مرشد Guide			
Bachelor's deg	ree درجة البكالوريوس			
درجة علمية - شهادة Degree	شهادة جامعية College degree			
Make money = Earn money يكتسب نقود				
قرض بنكي Loan				
قروض الطالب Student loans قروض الكلية				
يدفع Pay	Pay back يسدد ما عليه			
یعلن - یصرح Declare				
E.g. Spain declared war on Britain in 1796. 1796 في عام 1796				
التخصص الرئيسي Major	Declare a major يعلن عن التخصص			
E.g. What's your major? إما هو تخصصك الدراسي				









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





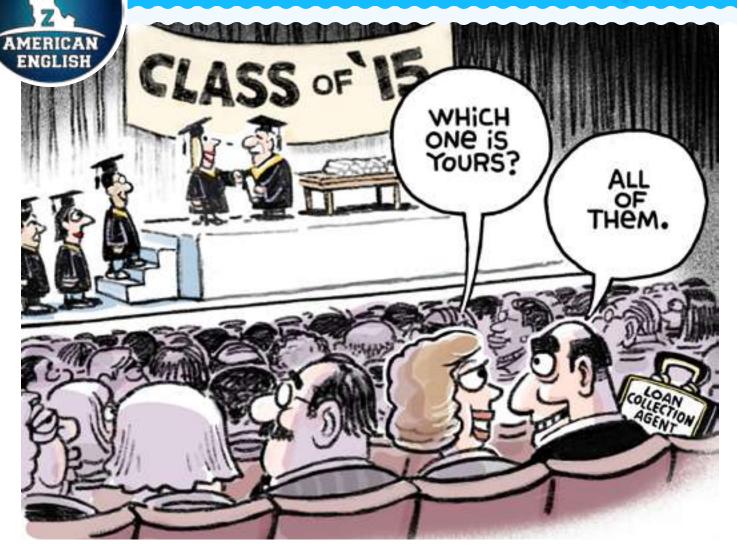
الوظيفة Job	المسار المهني/الوظيفي Career
ملجأ/مخبأ - منزل/بيت Shelter	Pay off = Pay back يسدد الدين
E.g. I'm going back to my shelter. أنا سأرجع إلى البيت	











فصل - دفعة Class		
وکیل Agent یجمع - یحصل		
تحصیل Collection	وكيل تحصل القروض Loan collection agent	







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش







	جامعة University	
	_	ردد الاسم مثلما جامعتك تقوله
كلية/ أعضاء هيئة Faculty التدريس في الجامعة	کلیة College	كلية School









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





تخفيض العمالة Downsizing

یبنی Build يعيد البناء Rebuild

EXTRA! The Troubled Times EXTRA!

Vol. 1 - No. 1

MPLOYED HEROES TAKE FLIGHT



مشكلة Trouble الأوقات المضطربة/العصيبة Troubled times يوظف - يقوم بتوظيف Employ E.g. I will employ somebody who can speak English. سأوظف شخص يستطيع تحدث الإنجليزية صاحب العمل Employer الموظفين Employees عاطل Unemployed يطير Take flight = Fly א No = Nope / Nay / Nah / ...etc رجل Dude = Man / Guy Hey dude, What's up? مرحبا يا رجل، ما الأخبار؟ يتم طرده Getting fired مطرود - مفصول من العمل Fired









حلقة المستوى الثاني

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Buddy = Friend	يستغني عن Spare
فکه Change = Coins	بدون وظيفة - عاطل Jobless = Unemployed
معدل Rate	يرتفع في الهواء Soar
E.g. I can type at a very fast rate. أستطيع الكتابة بمعدل سريع جداً	
Type الكتابة على الهاتف/الكمبيوتر إلخ	Write الكتابة بخط اليد

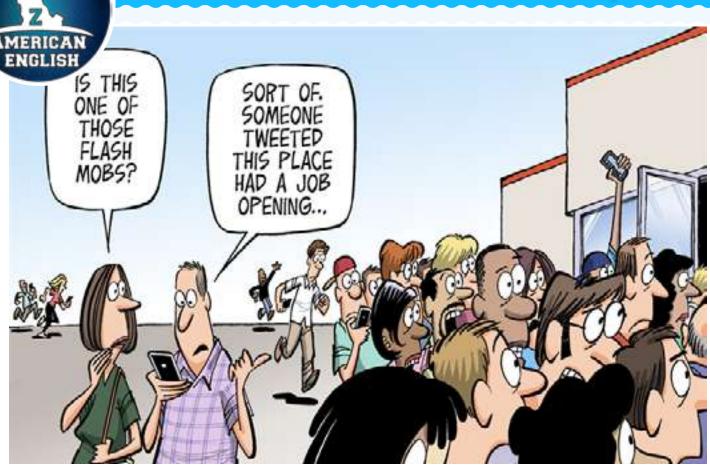














وظيفة متاحة A job opening







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





التخرج Graduation	یملیء استمارة Fill out form
كوبونات الأكل Food stamps	Unemployment البطالة
Energy assistance برنامج لمساعدة ذوي الدخول المحدودة التي لا تكفي لسداد الفواتير	الاسكان العام Public housing برنامج لإيجاد مساكن منخفضه الإيجار لذوي الدخول المنخفضة وذوي الإحتياجات الخاصة
العجز - عدم الأهلية Disability	الوضع الطبيعي الجديد The new normal
الرعاية الصحية Health care	رعاية الطفل Child care











من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



16 K Overdose Deaths Per Year



Obesity السمنه	Per = for each لکل کذا	
التبغ Tobacco	Gulp يبتلع بسرعه	
Fries / French fries البطاطس المقلية		

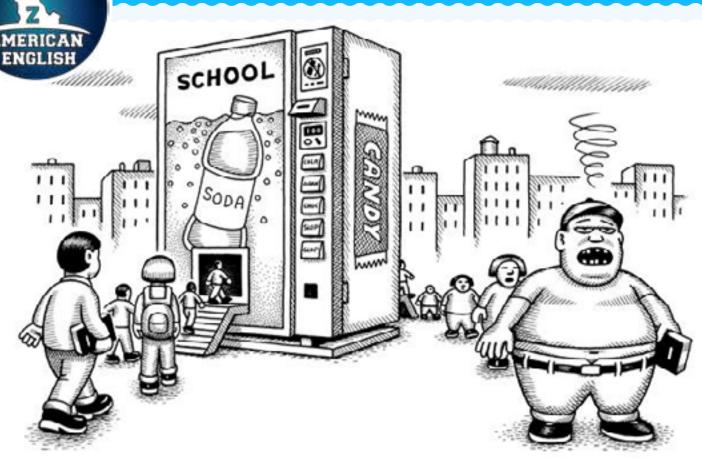






















شفرة أعريكا من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





نشاء Starch	التغذية Nutrition	
وزارة الزراعة في الولايات المتحدة USDA >> United States Department of Agriculture		
Food industry الصناعات الغذائية	مجموعة تأثير على البرلمان Lobby	



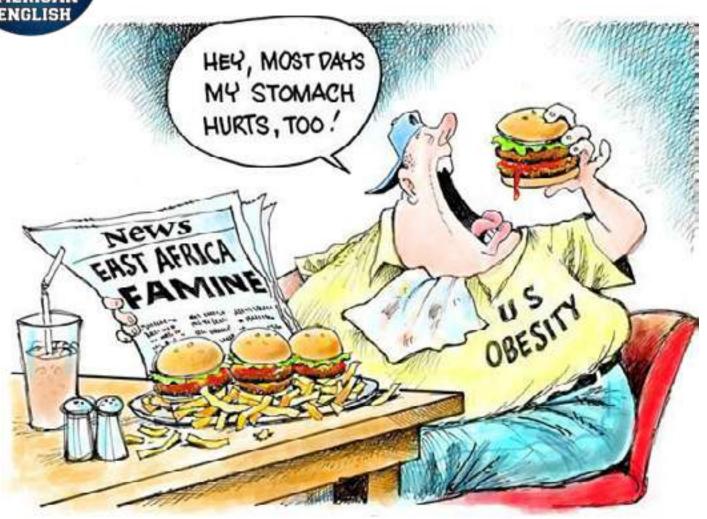






من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





محاعة Famine









تسورة أصالكا



من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

شيء يخطر على بالك Think of

هل فكرت في؟

Did you think of me?

یفکر فی شیء بتفاصیله Think about

Did you think about my birthday?

هل فكرت في عيد ميلادي؟

When you think of L.A. you think of Hollywood.

حينما تفكر في لوس أنجلوس، يأتي في بالك هوليوود

بالرغم من ذلك Though	نقطة البداية Ground zero
E.g. I don't like him though.	E.g. The library is ground zero of knowledge.
أنا لا أحبه بالرغم من ذلك	
متشرد Homeless	" التشرد Homelessness
What you don't hear though is that is ground zero of America's homelessness crisis.	

الذي لا تسمعه رغم ذلك هو أن هذه هي نقطة البداية لأزمة التشرد في الولايات المتحدة الامريكية

ينفجر Explode

عدد السكان Population

E.g.

The prices are exploding.

انفحار الاسعار

L.A. homeless population is exploding.

عدد السكان المشردين في لوس أنجلوس مرتفع لدرجة الانفجار

The number of people living on the streets and in shelters has soared by 75% in the past six years.

عدد الناس الذين يعيشون في الشوارع وفي الملاجيء قد ارتفع بنسبه %75 خلال الستة أعوام الماضية

حتی... Up to تستخدم للتعيين Given

There up to 60,000 homeless people in L.A. on any given night.

هناك حوالي 60 ألف مشرد في لوس أنجلوس في اي ليليه تحددها









يُنفرة أمريكا



من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

وسط البلد/المدينة Downtown
on Skid Row in the heart of downtown L.A. تركيز العددي الأكبر منهم يعيش هنا في منطقة (سكيد رو)
موظف رسمي - مسئول Official
یصدم Shock
tions here as shocking. سئول في الامم المتحدة قد وصف الظروف المعيشية هن
غیر موضوع في ملجأ Unsheltered لا مأوی له
O unsheltered homeless people on Skid Row. ـ يوجد سوى 9 مراحيض عامة لنحو 2000 شخص مشرد بلا
النظافة العامة Sanitation
Hepatitis التهاب الكبد Hepatitis A / Hepatitis B / Hepatitis C

On top of that, the streets are littered with needles that get reused. علاوة على ذلك فإن الشوارع مقدرة بالإبر التي يعاد استخدامها

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



The lack of water.

وفوق ذلك - علاوة على ذلك On top of that

شح المياه





غياب النظافة العامة قد تسبب في تفشى إلتهاب الكبد أ القاتُّل

يرمى النفاية في اي مكان Litter

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Once upon a time in a land far far away, there was a young country called America. America was a very healthy and prosperous country. A country where there was a few rich and a few poor, but the majority of people were in the middle not rich and not poor.

كان يا مكان، في أرض بعيدة كان هناك دولة شابة تدعى أمريكا، كانت أمريكا دولة قوية ومزدهرة. دولة حيث يوجد القليل من الأغنياء والقُّليل من الفقراء، ولكن غالبية المواطنين كانوا في الوسط، ليسوا بأغنياء وليسوا بفقراء.

Once upon a time کان یاما کان		
/ دولة قوية Healthy country	اقتصاد قوى Healthy economy	
Majority أغلبية/معظم	يزدهر Prosper	
E.g. The majority of workers. غالبية العمال	مزدهر Prosperous E.g.	
The majority of people. معظم الناس	دولة فى رغدً من العيش ويادي. A prosperous country	

A simple mailman could buy a home, get married and provide for his family. Maybe even send his kids to college someday. The schools were good and the streets were safe. The American people believed in the future. They all paid taxes to keep the country going. The poor paid a little bit of taxes, the middle paid a medium amount and the rich paid the most.

كان بمقدور ساعي بريد بسيط أن يشتري بيت، يتزوج ويتكفل بعائلته ربما حتى أن يدخل أطفاله الجامعة في يوم ما، كانت المدارس جيدة والشوارع آمنه، كان المواطنين الأمريكيين يؤمنون بالمستقبل، كانوا جميعهم يدفعون الضرائب للحفاظ على استمرارية الدولة. الفقير كان يدفع القليل من الضرائب، الطبقة الوسطى كانوا يدفعون كمية متوسطة والأغنياء كانوا يدفعون الكمية الأكبر

ساعي البريد Mailman	یتکفل/ یرعی مالیاً Provide
	E.g. Provide for his family. يصرف على عائلته
To keep country going = To keep country running للمحافظة على إستمرارية الدولة	

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN **ENGLISH**





من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



ENGLISH Everyone thought that was fair, until one day the rich decided they weren't rich enough and they found ways to evade taxes. There were loopholes in tax laws which they used to shelter their money. They also bought elections and manipulated politics in order to keep as much of their money as possible. With all the extra wealth, the rich took their money and built factories in countries where labor was dirt cheap and workers had no rights as the rich grew richer, the American workforce lost power. The middle class began to disappear and the wealth gap grew wider.

كان الجميع يعتقد أن هذا عادل، حتى يوم ما قرر فيه الأغنياء أنهم لم يكونوا بأغنياء بالدرجة الكافية ووجدوا طرق للتهرب من الضرائب. كانت هناك ثغرات في قوانين الضرائب والَّتي اسْتخدمُوهَا لَلِخْفَاء أموالهُم. قاموا أِيضًا بِشُراء اللَّانتخابات والُّتلاعب بالسياسات حتى يحتفظوا بَّأْكبر قدر ممكن من الأموَّال. بكل هذه الثروة الإضافية الأغنياء أخذوا أموالهم وانشأوا مصانع في بلاد فيها العمالة كانت رخيصة. بكل هذه الثروة الإضافية، الأغنياء أخذوا أموالهم وأنشأوا مصانع في بلاد فيها العمالة كأنت رخصيه ولم يكن للعمال أي حقوق بينما ازداد الأغنياء غني، فقدت القوى العاملة الأمريكية القوة. الطبقة الوسطى بدأت في الإختفاء والفجوة في الثروات أخذت في الاتساع

يتهرب/يتملص من Evade	ثغرة Loophole
	E.g. I found a loophole in the contract. أنا أكتشفت ثغرة في العقد
یأوی/یخفي To shelter	یتلاعب بـ Manipulate
	E.g. Superman can manipulate gravity.
	سوبر مان يستطيع التلاعب بالجاذبية
برخص التراب Dirt cheap	القوى العاملة Workforce
فجوة Gap	Grew wide يتسع
	Grew wider يتسع أكثر

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN





شفرة أمريكا من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



ENGLISH In order to keep the American people in line, the rich bought newspapers, TV, radio stations and spread the message that this was all for the better interests of the people and that money would trickle down. As it stands today, the top 1% of the population owns 40% of the country's wealth. How can a simple mailman support his family now?

لكي يبقوا الشعب الأمريكي تحت السيطرة، قاموا الأغنياء بشراء صحف، محطات الاذاعة والتليفزيون وقاموا ببث الرسائل أن هذا كان في مصلحة المواطنين وان المال سيتدفق عليهم. في الوضع الحالي 1% من السكان في القمة يمتلكون %40 من مقدرات الدولة. والأن كيف سيكون ساعي البريد البسيط أن يتكفل بعائلتة؟

Keep people in line = Keep people under control

ينشر / نشر Spread

AMERICAN

يتقطر / يصب Trickle

As it stands = In the present circumstances في الظروف الحالية

Trickle down





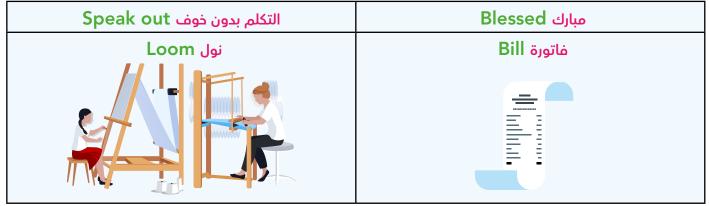






شفرة أمريكا من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





By comparison, the Census Bureau found that full-time, year-round working women earned 80% of what their male counterparts earned in 2016.

By comparison بالمقارنة	التعداد Census
مكتب - وكالة Bureau	Year-round = Throughout the year على مدار العام
Working women النساء العاملات	نظیرہ - مساوي له Counterpart









Make up for يعوض كذا

So, let's see if we can make up for seven years of lost time.

إذن دعنا نرى إذا كان يمكننا تعويض سبعة سنوات من الوقّت الضائع

مضابقة - تحرش Harassment

المحتوم - لا مفر منه Inevitable

After Trump's decision, China's tax on American products is inevitable.

بعد قرار ترامب، الضرائب الصينية على المنتجات الأمريكية أصبح أمر لا مفر منه

يسوى Settle

I thought we could settle this like men.

كنت اظن اننا نستطيع تسوية هذا كالرجال







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش









As well as = In addition to بالإضافة إلى

E.q.

أستطيع السباحة بالإضافة إلى الغوص can swim as well as dive. أستطيع السباحة بالإضافة إلى الغوص

She can sing as well as dance. تستطيع الغنى بالإضافة إلى الرقص

راتب Salary أجر Wage

التمين Discrimination

رفع قضنة File a suit

التمييز على أساس النوء Gender discrimination

Racial discrimination التمييز على أساس العرض

Religious discrimination التمييز على أساس الدين













یصبح أسوأ Worsen = To become worse

أجر / مرتب Pay



'So, what is seventy-eight percent of doodly-squat?'

Doodly-squat / Diddly-squat = Nothing









شفرة أمريكا

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



طريقة مؤدبة للتعبير عن الأنفعال Heck	بفهم Figure out			
E.g.	E.g.			
What the heck have you done?	I'm sure you can figure that out by			
ماذا فعلت؟	yourself.			
	أنا متأكد أنك تستطيع أن تفهم ذلك بمفردك			
In the traditional sense بالمعني التقليدي	ثرثرة - فضفضة Chatter			
E.g.	E.g.			
Today's video wasn't educational in	I'm doing my best to pay attention to			
the traditional sense.	their chatter.			
فيديو اليوم لم يكن تعليمياً بالمعنى التقليدي	أفعل ما بوسعي لأصغى لثرثرتهم			
ينفس - التنفيس	أنصت إلي حتى أنتهي Hear me out			
E.g.	E.g.			
It's healthy to vent your anger.	Don't interrupt me and hear me out.			
من الصحي التنفيس عن غضبك	لا تقاطعني واسمعني للنهاية			
آزاحة شيء من على صدرك To get something off your chest				
E.g. Tell me what's bothering you. Get it off	E.g. Tell me what's bothering you. Get it off your chest. أخبرني ما يزعجك. ازم من على صدرك			
زمیل - رفیق Fellow	خارطة طريق - دليل تفصيلي Roadmap			
E.g.	E.g.			
My fellow teachers, you have my	Our action plan depends on this			
unshakable respect.	roadmap			
زملائي المدرسين، لديكم إحترامي الذي لا يتزعزع	خطة عملنا تعتمد على خارطة الطريق هذه			
جاهل - غير مطلع Uninformed	يلقي/يسلط الضوء على Shed light on			
E.g.	E.g.			
She is uninformed of the change that	He tried to shed light on some			
has been taking place in her country.	important issues.			
هي لُم تكن على دراية بالتغيرات التي تحدث في بلدها	لقد حاول تسليط الضوء على بعض القضايا المهمه			
المتعصبون - المتحزبون Bigots				
E.g.				

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على





Bigots won't be bigot s if they read. لن يكون المتعصبون متعصبون إذا كانوا يقرأون





شفرة أمريكا

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



بغيض - لا يطاق Obnoxious	مرفوض Disagreeable	
E.g.	E.g.	
Jack is an obnoxious guy. I can't stand	This situation is disagreeable to	
جاك فتى بغيض. لا اطيقه .him.	هذا الأمر مروفض بالنسبه لكندا	
مقیت - کریه Hateful	يقحم - يورط Involve	
E.g.	E.g.	
Posting hateful comments is easy for	I'm sorry I had to involve you in this.	
every idiot.	أنا أسف إنى أضطرت لإقحامك في هذا	
نشر تعليقات كريهه هو أمر سهل على كل أحمق		
يشرك - يجر إلى Draw into	یثیر استیاء Displease	
E.g.	E.g.	
Don't draw me into your little mind	Many Americans displease policymakers	
لا تجرني على ألعاب العقل الخاصة بك .games	in Washington.	
	العديد من الأمريكان يثير استياء صناع السياسة في واشنطن	

تبق ثابتاً - تكن على أرض صلبة To hold your ground

E.a.

Even after being told off by her boss, she held her ground and explained why حتى بعد أن عنفت من قبل مديرها. بقيت ثابته وشرحت لماذا كانت محقه .she was right

كن رجلاً - استرجل Grow a pair	يعظ - يبشر Preach	
E.g. Look, I have no time to wait until you grow a pair. أنظر ليس لدى الوقت لأنتظرك حتى تصبح رجلا	E.g. We must preach through examples. يجب أن نعظ (نعلم) عن طريق القدوة الحسنة	
قریب وعزیز Near and dear	یخجل - علی استحیاء Bashfully	
E.g. The patient was very near and dear to her heart. كان المريض قريبها وعزيزاً على قلبها	E.g. She smiled bashfully, turned around and walked away. ابتسمت بخجل، استدرت ومضت بعيداً	

فلس - قرش Dime

Your father went through every dime he has saved.

استنفذ والدك كل قرش كان قد ادخره









يْسُرِهُ آمريكا

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Reap	the	fruit	of	یجنی ثمار کذا
------	-----	-------	----	---------------

E.g.

الا's time for you to reap the fruit of your hard work. حان الوقت لكي تجني ثمار عملك الجاد

رب العالمين The lord of the worlds القوم - الناس Folks E.g. Did you folks hear the news? All praise is due to Allah, the lord of الحمد لله رب العالمين .the worlds هل سمعتم الأخبار أيها القوم؟ مغسول الدماغ Brainwashed مستعبد Enslaved E.g. There are so many untold stories of en-

They were brainwashed by media. تم غسيل ادمغتهم من قبل الأعلام

slaved Africans.

هناك العديد من القصص الغير مروية عن الإفرقيين المستعبدين

اخلاقىاً Morally النواه - الباطن Core E.g.

E.g. He was rocked to his core by a simple لقد عصف من باطنه بسبب سؤال بسيط .question

This is morally unacceptable.

هذا غير مقبول أخلاقيا

ان ترجل رجلاً ملقى على الأرض To kick a man when he's down

E.g.

Noble knights don't kick a man when he's down.

الفرسان النبلاء لا يضربون رجلاً ملقى على الأرض

يسدد الضربة القاضية Knock-out يحاول الوصول إلى Trying to get at

E.g.

What are you trying to get at?

E.g.

Muhammad Ali used to knock-out his opponents. ما الذي تحاول الوصول إليه؟

أعتاد محمد على أن يقضى على خصومة بالضربة القاضية

من نخدع؟ مش هنضحك على بعض Who are we kidding

E.g.

It was tasty but who are we kidding? He is a bad cook.

کان مذاقه جید ولکن من نخدع؟ هو طباخ سیء









لشفرة أمريكا

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



الرفيق - اللين Gentleness

E.a.

You can win more by gentleness rather than violence.

يمكنك أن تكسب أكثر بالرفق أكثر من العنف

ررتکب Commit

اثم - ذنب Sin

E.g.

There isn't a single person who has never committed any sin.

لا پوجد ولا شخص واحد لم پرتکب ای ذنب

مؤمن Believer

E.a.

My friend is a true believer.

You can't ignore the law.

صدیقی مؤمن حقا

لا يمكنك تجاهل القانون

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على







نتحاهل Ignore

→ Google Play



شفرة أمريكا من قناة ذا امپركان انجلش



Military report: Young women on bases, sailors on ships at greatest risk for sexual assault

النساء في القواعد العسكرية، البحارة على متن السفن الأكثر عرضة لخطر الإعتداء الجنسي

Military report تقرير عسكرية Bases > Military bases		
إعتداء جنسي Sexual assault مخاطرة - عرضة لخطر		
في القواعد العسكرية on military bases في القواعد العسكرية نمى داخل القواعد العسكرية		
E.g. U.S. soldiers celebrate thanksgiving in a military base north Iraq. الجنود الأمريكيين يحتفلون بعيد الشكر في داخل قاعدة عسكرية شمال العراق		

Reports of Military Sexual Assault Rise Sharply

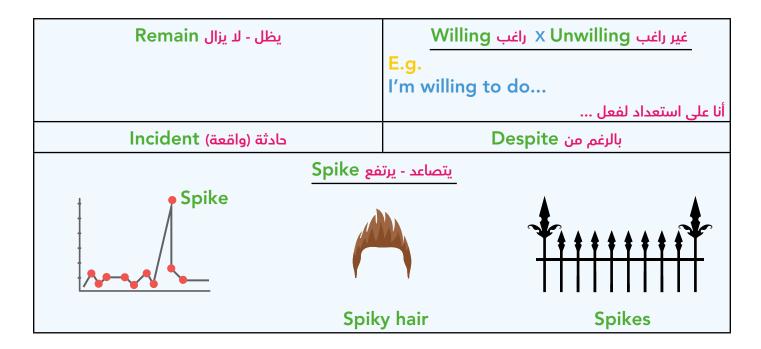
التقارير عن الإعتداءات الجنسية العسكرية ترتفع بشكل حاد

Sexual Assault Rises at Military Academies: Report

Students remain unwilling to formally report incidents, despite a spike in sexual harassment, assault.

الإعتداء الجنسي يرتفع في الأكاديميات العسكرية

لا يزال الطلاب غير رّاغبين في الإبّلاغ عن الحوادث او الوقائع بشكل رسمي، على الرغم من أرتفاع حالات التحرش والإعتداء الجنسي











شفرة أمريكا من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Sexual Assault in Military Isn't Going Away as a Problem

البعتداءات الجنسية العسكرية لن تختفي كمشكلة







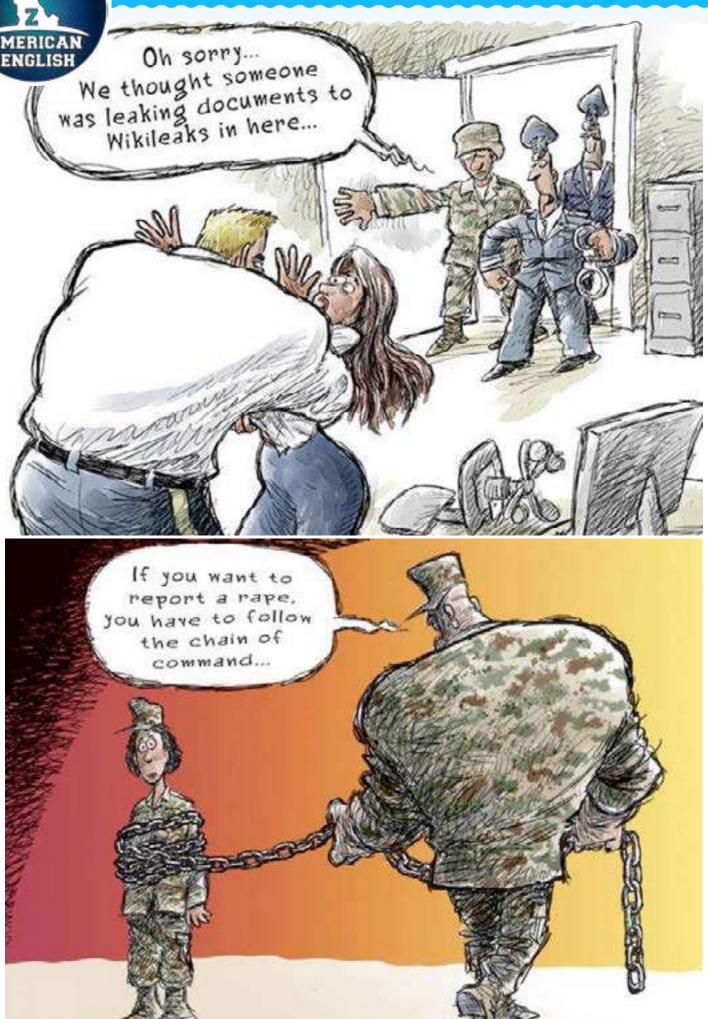








المستوى الثاني



ONLY WOMEN I RANK SIXES and UNDER WILL BE ALLOWED TO ENLIST.



THE TRUMP PLAN FOR REDUCING SEXUAL ASSAULTS IN THE MILITARY







Noun the adj Z AMERICAN ENGLISH

كورس القواعد

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Gerunds الأسم المشتق من الفعل

تكوين الاسم المشتق Verb + ing

Quiz:1

Sleep > Sleeping



Write the gerunds from these verbs

أكتب الأسم المشتق من هذه الأفعال

ساهد Watch

يلعب Play

پذاکر Study

Quiz:2

اي من الجمل الآتيه تعبر عن فعل مستمر وأيهما تعبر عن الأسم المشتق من الفعل

- 1. Tom is watching TV in the living room.
- 2. Jumping hight is not very easy.
- 3. Playing basktball is my hobby.
- 4. I like reading books.
- 5. She is doing her homework.
- 6. Sleeping well is very important for you.

The Answer

المشاهدة Watching المساهدة Playing اللعب Jumping المذاكرة Syudying

The Answer

1. فعل مستمر

2. اسم

3. اسم

4. اسم

5. فعل مستمر

6. اسم

قاعدة إضافة ing للفعل

إذا كان الفعل منتهى بحرف e احذف الحرف قبل إضافة

Smile > Smilling Make > Making

طريقة تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاى تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.

كورس القواعد من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش AMERICAN ENGLISH



Stop > Stopping

Begin > Beginning

2uiz:3

رتب الجمل الآتيه

ُمثال للفهم

chess - like - Steve - play >>> Steve likes playing chess

- 1. Janet practice play with violin
- 2. Tim love study science
- 3. cook My sister dislike
- 4. The boys win the game imagine

The Answer

- 1. Janet practices playing the violin.
- 2. Tim loves studying science.
- 3. My sister dislikes cooking.
- 4. The boys imagine winning the game.

Go Gerund

go يأتى بعدها الأسم المشتق من الفعل

Go swimming Go playing

Go running Go shopping

The Answer

أنا سوف أذهب لصيد السمك غداً

I will go fishing tomorrow.

Dislike - Enjoy - Imagine - Practice - Keep - Finish

هذه الأفعال لا تأتى بعدها to في معظم الحالات

He dislikes waiting.

I dislike wasting my time.

I enjoyed studying.

He imagines being the president.

They practice playing the violin.

Why do you keep doing this?

When will you finish painting the house?

أنا اكره إضاعة وقتى أنا أستمتع بالمذاكرة هو يتخيل كونه الرئيس هم يتمرنون على عزف الكمان لماذا تستمر على فعل ذلك؟

متى سوف تنتهى من دهاب البيت

هو بكره الانتظار

كورس القواعد



Complete the sentences with the gerund form of the words from the box.

do - read - play - watch - live

1. Jake enjoyes _____ a book.

AMERICAN

ENGLISH

- 2. We finished ____ our homework.
- 3. Sunsan dislikes horror movies. They are too scary.
- 4. Henry practiced ___ the guitar for three monthes.
- 5. I miss ____ in New York. It is my hometown.

The Answer

- 1. road 2. doing
- 5. living 3. watching 4. playing

Homework

استخدم الكلمات بين الاقواس لتكملة الجملة

- 1. Present She (shope) _____ every day.
- 2. Past I (ski) ____ last saturday.
- 3. Present He (swim) ____ with his brother.
- 4. Present My dad (fish) ____ on fridays.
- 5. Past Harry and I (camp) _____ yesterday.

- **Q** What did he finish? (run a marathon)
- (A) He finished running a marathon.

What does she practice? (Speak French)

Q What do they quit?

(Write a poem)

A

Q What did they imagine?

(Be a singer)



The Answer

- (A) She practices speaking French. 1
- They quit writing a poem. 2
- 3 I imagined being a singer.



1 on an island is fun for Sarah and Bobo. 2 trees is easy for Bobo. Once, they sail to another island. 3 scares Bobo. There, Sarah sells her coconuts. Her job is $\frac{4}{2}$ coconuts. their goal is $\frac{5}{2}$ home.

The Answer

- 1. Living
- 2. Climbing
- 5. getting
- 3. Sailing
 - 4. selling

"Noun the adj

كورس القواعد





(B)

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Infinitives

مصدر الفعل

He plans to do هو يخطط أن يفعل

Basic form + to



The Answer

He wants to buy a computer.



ترجم

هو يريد أن يشتري كمبيوتر

Expect - Decide - Plan - Learn - Ask - Need - Hope - Want یرید یامل یحتاج یطلب یتعلم یخطط یقرر یتوقع

هذه الأفعال لم يأتي بعدها فعل لذلك لن نضع to

She learns French.

هي تتعلم الفرنسية

هذه الأفعال تأتي بعدها to إذا جاء بعدها فعل

She learns to speak French.

هي `أن تتحدث الفرنسية

The Answer

- 1. I ask her to speak to him.
- 2. We need to fight back.
- 3. Don't expect him to talk to you.





- 1. انا طلبت منها أن تتحد إليه.
 - 2. نحتاج أن نقاوم.
- 3. لا تتوقع منه أن يتحدث إليك.

كورس القواعد





اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- a. We decided to go with you.
- b. We decided go with you.
- c. We decided to going with you.
- a. How do you plan to finding it?
- b. How do you plan to finds it?
- c. How do you plan finding it?

The Answer

We decided to go with you. قررنا أن نذهب معك

الإجابة الصحيحة هي How do you plan to find it? كيف تخطط لأن تجدها؟

- 1. I want a book.
- 2. She asked for my help.
- 3. I need a shower.

- > I want (read) _____ a book.
- > She asked me (help) ____ a book.
- > I need (take) _____ a shower.
- 4. My cousin learned Spanish. > My cousin learned (speak) _____ Spanish.
- 5. Jack forgot his gloves. > Jack forgot (wear) ____ his gloves.

1. I want to read a book.

2. She asked me to help her.

- 3. I need to take a shower. 5. Jack forgot to wear his gloves.
- 4. My cousin learned to speak Spanish.

Quiz

George enjoys (read) ____ mystery books.

Do you want (go) ____ to the movies?

Jim and his brother agree (share) _____ their toys.

Niki keeps (play) ____ soccer.

Last night, we decided (have) pizza for dinner.

الفرق بين **Verb + infinitive** Enjoy to talk. Verb + gerund يستمتع أن يتحدث Enjoy talking. يستمتع بالحديث Hope to understand. يأمل أن يفهم Hope understanding.

The Answer

reading - to go - to share - playing - to have

طريقة تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاي تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.

كورس القواعد

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Gerund VS Infinitives

تبدأ الجملة ب Gerund في الكُّلام العامى و ال Infinitive في الكلام ذو الصبغة الشعرية.

المحور الأول

Walking is good for your health. المشي جيد لصحتك

مثال

التعرف على الناس اسهل بكثير هذه الأيام Meeting people is a lot easier nowaday. أن تكون او لا تكون - ذلك هو السؤال To be, or not to be, that is the question.





الصفة يأتي بعدها الـ Infinitive ما عدا حالتين

It is necessary to speak English to get a good job.

من الضروري أن تتحدث الإنجليزية لتحصل على وظيفة جيدة

These students are difficult to teach.

هؤلاء الطلبة صعب تدريسهم

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

These pople are good _____ (know).

(knowing - to know)

لاحظ أن معنى الجملة اتغير جذرياً

It is a book about to grow up in a village. انه كتاب على وشك أن ينشأ في القرية

والسبب ان about to تعنى على وشك أن يحدث

دائماً نستخدم ال Gerund بعد حرف الجر

⇒ It is a book about growing up in a village.

هو كتاب عن النشوء في القرية

Please forgive me for being so stupid.

رجاء سامحني لكوني غبي جداً

كنت أفكر في اخذها

I was thinking about taking it.

I'm sure your daughter is looking forward to having you.

أنا متأكد أن ابنتك تتطلع إلى وجودك معها

المحور الثاني

أفعال تقبل الفعل مضاف له ing أو الفعل + المصدر

They never doing their homework.

انهم لا ينسون عمل الواجب

لوصف حالة

He remembers doing... هو پتذکر فعل...

Rmember to do...

نصحية للمستقبل تذكر أن تفعل...

Don't forget to do your homework.

لا تنسى عمل الواجب



الاستمتاع بفعل شيء

I like reading books.

I like riding my bike.

I like talking with my father.

روتین لفعل شیء

I like to read books.

I like to ride my bike in the afternoon.

I like to talk with my father before he goes work.



She stopped going to the gym.

هي توقفت عن الذهاب للجيم

She stopped to talk to him.

هى توقفت للتحدث إليه

I stopped picking up the kids from school.

توقفت عن أخذ الأطفال من المدرسة

I will stop to pick up the kids from school.

سأتوقف لأخذ الأطفال من المدرسة

طريقة تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاى تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.

كورس القواعد من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Quiz: 1

Choose the correct word

- 1. Sammy enjoys (to eat eating) cereal for breakfast.
- 2. Fred needs (to exercise exercising) daily.
- 3. She learns (to speak speaking) Chinese.
- 4. Do you want me (to ask asking) your umbrella.
- 5. Please remember go (to bring bringing) him.
- 6. We usually go (to camp camping) in the summer.

AMERICAN

The Answer eating - to excercise - to speak - to ask - to bring - comping

Quiz: 2

استعمل It is not + adjective

- 1. To watch an action movie is exciting. It is not exciting to watch an action movie.
- 2. To go to the zoo is fun.
- 3. To study hard is important.
- 4. To buy a new car isn't cheap.
- 5. To write a poem isn't easy.

The Answer

- 2. It is not fun to go to the zoo.
- 3. It is not important to study hard.
- 4. It is not cheap to buy a new car.
- 5. It is not easy to write a poem.

طريقة تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاي تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.

كورس القواعد



من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

ی من قب

Habitual Past

عادة كانت تحصل زمان وليست موجودة الأن



مثال

التكوين used to + verb الفاعل

I usaed to run3 kilometers everday.

أنا أعتدت أن اجري ٣ كيلومترات كل يوم

اكتشف الاخطاء في الجمل الآتيه ان وجدت

- 1. She is used to play tennis.
- 2. We use to visit him a lot.
- 3. I used to reading many books.
- 4. He used to be my friend.

ترجم

- 1. كان لدې مكتب كهذا
- = اعتدت أن يكون لدي مكتب كهذا
- 2. کان شریکي = اعتاد أن یکون شریکي
 - 3. اعتادت أمى أن تعد طبيخ

The Answer

- 1. She used to play tennis.
- 2. We used to visit him a lot.
- 3. I used to read many book.
- 4. He used to be my freiend.

The Answer

- 1. I used to have an office like this.
- 2. He used to be my partner.
- 3. My mama used to make stew.



طبيخ باللحم < stew

اكتشف الاخطاء في الجمل الآتيه ان وجدت

- 1. She isn't used to believe me.
- 2. We didn't used to like him.
- 3. Frank didn't use to own a dog.
- 4. Jack didn't use to going to school.

I used to live in Paris.

I didn't use to live in Paris.

The Answer

She didn't use to believe me.
We didn't use to like him.
Frank didn't use to own a dog.
Jack didn't use to go to school.

كورس القواعد



من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



 1. هل عشت في مصر من قبل؟
 2. هل كنت تحب مادة الرياضيات؟ 3. هل كنت سائق تاكسي من قبل؟

Did you use to watch a lot of TV?

إجابة السؤال

Yes, I used to watch a lot of TV. Yes, I did.



No, I didn't use to watch a lot TV. No, I did't.



هل اعتدت أن تلعب كرة القدم؟

Did you use to play soccer?

Did she use to have long hair?

هل اعتادت أن يكون لها شعر طويل؟

السؤال

The Answer

- 1. Did you use to live in Egypt?
- 2. Did you use to like math?
- 3. Did you use to be a taxi driver?



كون سؤال وإجابة

You - play computer games Did you use to play computer games? Yes, I used to play computer games.

Change the sentance into negatives \mathbf{n} or questions \mathbf{Q} .

- 1. Sunsan used to fall asleep in class.
- 2. Army used to have a garden. 0
- 3. Tim used to go to school with Sarah.
- 4. I used to eat vegetables.
- 5. Mom used to go to college in England.

 Output

 Description:

- 1. We eat pizze for lunch (No...)
- 2. George be in a rock band (Yes...)
- 3. Michelle drink apple juice (No...)
- 4. Mike and Kate have a car (Yes...)

The Answer

- 1. Sunsan didn't use to fall asleep in class.
- 2. Did army use to have a garden?
- 3. Did Tim use to go to school with Sarah?
- 4. I didn't use to eat vegetables.
- 5. Did Mom used to go to college in England?

The Answer

- 1. Did we use to eat pizze for lunch? No, we didn't. No, you didn't.
- 2. Did George use to be in a rock band? Yes, he did.
- 3. Did Michelle use to drink apple juice? No, Michelle didn't use to drink apple juice.
- 4. Did Mike and Kate use to have a car? Yes, Mike and Kate used to have a car.

طريقة تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاي تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.

0

كورس القواعد من قناة ذا اميركان انجليث AMERICAN

Advice

Modal

Should

Had better

الفعل في صورته الطبيعية نقدر نستخدة كفعل أمر

صيغة منفرة جداً للفعل الأمر

أجلس Sit down

Please, sit down

صيغة أكثر تلطفاً للفعل الأمر تقدر تخفض صوتك أو تستعمل Please

ملحوظة

Should من الأفعال ال Should وهي أفعالَ لا تقبلَّ إضافات والأفعال التي تأتي بعدها لا تقبل إضافات إيضاً

لاحظ في هذه الجملة لم نضع اي إضافات للفعل

Should

يحب (المفروض)

أقتراح أو نصيحة

الأستخدام

You should go to bed early يجب عليك أن تذهب إلى النوم مبكراً

He should buy a new phone. ىچپ عليه شراء هاتف حديد

طلب النصيحة

Should I call her now? هل ينبغي أن أتصل بها الآن

Yes, you should. No, you shouldn't.

ENGLISH

should not

Should not

You should not eat a lot of fast food.

يجب أن لا تأكل الكثير من الوجبات السريعة

They should not leave the house at this time. لا ينبغى لهم مغادرة المنزل في هذا الوقت

He should not talk to his father that way. يجب أن لا يتحدث مع والدة بهذة الطرية

كورس القواعد نوا





Had better

من الأفضل لك

الأستخدام

للتهديد أو النصيحة المشددة

ملحوظة

من الأفعال التي لا تقبل إضافات had better والأفعال التي تأتي بعدها لا تقبل إضافات إيضاً

you'd better = you had better

You had better do your homework. من الأفضل لك أن تفعل واجبك

You had better study for the test. من الأفضل لك أن تذاكر للأختبار

You had better see a doctor. من الأفضل لك أن تزور الطبيب

Quiz

Had better not

You had better not hit your sister again. من الأفضل لك إلا تضرب اختك مرة آخرى

Find the mistakes if any

- 1. She should to get more sleep.
- 2. Do should go to the park today?
- 3. We not had better stay out too late.
- 4. We should go not to the movies today?
- 5. She have better call me back.

The Answer

- 1. She should get more sleep.
- 2. Should I go to the park today.
- 3. We had better not stay out late.
- 4. We should not go to the movies today?
- 5. She had better call me back.

طريقة تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاي تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.



Adjective لأنها تصف الاسم



سؤال لك

The Answer

- 1. happily
- 2. slow

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1. We're (happy happily) married.
- 2. Prison time is (slow slowly) time.

طريقة تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاي تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.

كورس القواعد

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

أمثلة على الحال

She sings loudly.

AMERICAN

ا. حال يوصف فعل

۲. حال پدخل علی صفة

He is usually nice to his friends.

She is very beautiful.

۳. حال پدخل علی حال

He spoke extremely slowly.

How to form the adverb?

— الحال أصلة صفة (في بعض الاحوال<u>)</u> Happily —— Happy

إضافة yا في النهاية

الصفة تكون منتهية			
بصوت <mark>e</mark>			
تحذف ال e وتقلب إلى <i>إ</i>			

الصفه منتهيه ب٧ تقلب الy إلى i ويضاف <mark>y</mark> اخر صوت لو <mark>ساکن</mark> يضاف yا

Terrible - Terribly

Visible - Visibly

Possible - Possibly

Happy - Happily

Angry - Angrily

Quick - Quickly

Exact - Exactly

Active - Actively



مثال

مثال

مثال



Adverbs of Degree

يأتي قبل الكلمة التي سوف يعطينا معلومات عنها

It's very cold outside.

الطقس بارد جداً في الخارج.

My old car was so small.

سيارتي القديمة كانت صغيرة جداً.

He speaks too fast.

هو يتحدث بسرعة جداً.

David really likes dogs.

ديفيد جداً يحب الكلاب.

Adverbs of Sequence

يأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة، وإذا جاء في البداية نضع بعده ,

First, I did my homework. I watched TV then.

أولاً، أديت واجبى. شاهدت التلفاز بعد ذلك.

Clean your room. Then, do your homework.

نظف غرفتك. ثم، أد واجبك.

لا يأتى بين الفعل والمفعول

I studied English.

First, I English. I studied English first. أُولاً، ذاكرت إنجليزي. ذاكرت إنجليزي <mark>أولاً</mark>.









Adverbs of Frequency

L		Adverbs	Examples
10	0%	Always	We always go to school by bus.
		Usually	She usually does her homework at 4:30.
П		Often	l often sing in a band.
П		Sometimes	Mom sometimes buys new clothes.
		Hardly	I hardly eat chocolate.
0	%	Never	They are never late for school.

Adverbs of Manner

أسلوب فعل الشيء أو الطريقة التي فعل بها هذا الشيء ويأتى بعد الفعل الرئيسي مباشرةً أو بعد المفعول

When the teacher speaks, we listen carefully.

عندما يتكلم المدرس، نحن نستمع بحرص.

She spoke softly to her younger brother.

هي تحدثت بهدوء ورفق إلى شقيقها الأصغر.

I waited patiently for her to arrive.

أنا انتظرتها يصبر أن تصل.

He left the room quickly.

هو غادر الغرفة بسرعة.











يأتي في نهاية الجملة، وللتأكيد على الوقت نضعه في بداية الجملة ونضع بعده ,

I'm going to Alexandria tomorrow.

He left yesterday.

أنا ذاهب إلى الإسكندرية غداً. هو غادر بالامس.

Now, I'm going to call Michael and tell him the news.

الآن، سأتصل مايكل واخبره الأخبار.

Next year, she is going to be the manager.

العام القادم، ستكون هي المديرة.

Flat Adverbs

__ كلمة تستخدم كحال / كصفة

بسرعة Fast - سريع

Drive slow = Drive slowly

She studies hard

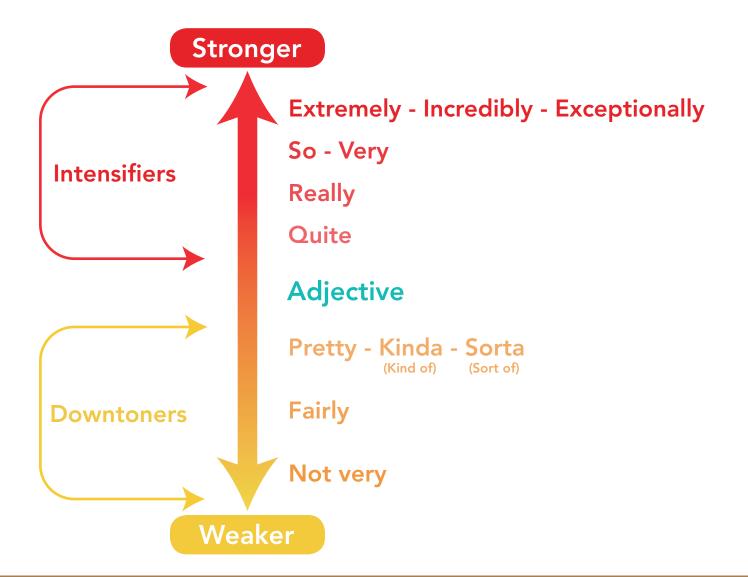
She hardly studies

هي تذاكر بجد



كورس القواعد من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

وظيفة الحال	نوع الحال
يبين قوة أو ضعف الصفة	Adverb of degree
Intensifier	Adverb of degree



تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN ENGLISH







ENGLISH

Examples

I'm happy.		I'm not very happy.	
This mattress is soft.		This mattress is fairly soft.	
This mattress is soft.		This mattress is sorta soft.	
She is hungry.		She is quite hungry.	
She is beautif	ul.	She is	s really beautiful.
I'm thirsty.	I'm so thirsty.		I'm very thirsty.
(extremely - exceptionally - incredibly) للمبالغة في قوة الصفة نستخدم			
We are happy.		We are extremely happy.	
The Japanese are polite.		The Japanese are exceptionally polite.	
She is scared of Jane because she is smart.		She is scared of Jane because she is incredibly smart.	

صفات آخري لتقوية المعنى مثل:

This car is very big. This car is extremely big.

= This car is huge.









AMERICAN

The Definite Article

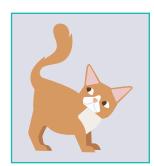
Now, you definitely know what I'm talking about.

للتعميم لا تستعمل The

للتحديد تستعمل The



انظر إلى القطة البيضاء.



ة فطة

1. My brother is going to Canada next year.	لأنها محددة ولا تحتاج إلى the
2. I like flowers.	للتعميم
3. Boys are stronger than girls.	للتعميم
4. The boys in my class are very naughty.	للتحديد
5. Life is short.	للتعميم
6. He was much better during the life of his father.	للتحديد







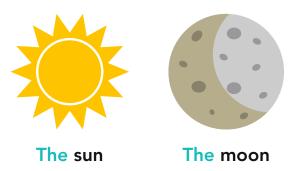






أكمل ما يلي:

- أحمد لا بحب المدرسة.
- المدرسة التي في شارعنا قديمة جداً.
- Ahmed doesn't like
- in our street is very old.
- أنا أذهب إلى العمل بالحافلة (الأتوبيس).
- الأتوبيس المتجه إلى القاهرة يغادر في الخامسة مساءً.
- I got to work by
- to Cairo leaves at 5 p.m.



- The president gave a speech yesterday.
- She gave me an apple, the apple wasn't delicious.

تحدید متکرر









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

أبام الأسبوع + The

- Friday is a public holiday in Egypt. الجمعة هو اجازة رسمية في مصر
- الجمعة التي قبل العيد مباشرةً... - The Friday before Eid...
- The Monday before...
- The Monday after...

AMERICAN

- The first, second, ..., last Monday.
- I will see you on Monday.
- She came back on Monday.

لم نستخدم the لعدم وجود حاجة للتحديد.

أسماء العلم + The

- You're not the Mohamed that I used to know.

أنت لست محمد الذي كنت أعرفه.

- That's not the Ahmed who used to love his country.

هذا ليس أحمد الذي كان يحب بلده.









The + of

عندما تأتى of مع الاسماء نستخدم معها the لأنهم مترابطين.

The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia.

المملكة العربية السعودية.

The Arab republic of Egypt.

حمهورية مصر العربية.

- In the month <mark>of</mark> July...

فی شهر یولیو...

- On the day <mark>of</mark> his arrival...

في يوم وصوله...

أسماء الدول المجموعة + The

The Philippines الفلبينيين

The Emirates الامارات

The United Arab **Emirates**

الإمارات العربية المتحدة

The Sudan السودان

The republic of Sudan جمهورية السودان

وضعنا the قبل اسم الـ Sudan لأن هناك دولة اسمها السودان ومنطقة اسمها بلاد السودان، لذلك أضفنا The لتحديد المعنى على دولة السودان فقط.







كورس القواعد

من قناة ذا اميركان





الصفات

صفات قوية

Strong Adjectives لا تحتاج لـvery

Strong adjective = very (base adjective)

صفات عادية

Base Adjectives (صفات الأساس)

Fantastic = Very good		
Fantastic	Ø	
Very fantastic	×	

Very beautiful = Gorgeous	
Gorgeous	Ø
Very gorgeous	×

Very ugly = Hideous	
Hideous	Ø
Very hideous	×

Base Adjective	Meaning	Strong Adjective	Meaning
Dirty	متسخ	Filthy	قذر - بذيء
Bad	سيء	Terrible	فظيع
Angry	غاضب	Furious	مستشيط غضبا
Tired	متعب	Exhausted	هك - مستنزف
Surprised	متفاجئ	Astonished	مذهول
Big	کبیر	Enormous	ھائل
Small	صغير	Tiny	دقيق الحجم
Fat	بدين - سمين	Obese	سمين بإفراط
Cold	بارد	Freezing	متجمد
Hot	حار - ساخن	Boiling	يغلي

تعلم اللغة اللِنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على







App Store Google Play



الصفات

صفات قوية

AMERICAN

ENGLISH

Strong Adjectives absolutely + strong adj (للمبالفة)

> Absolutely fantastic رائع جدا

صفات عادية

Base Adjectives very + base adi

Absolutely astonished مذهول جدا

Absolutely furious مستشيط الغضب بدرجة كبيرة

تقدر تستخدم absolutely في الشارع مع الصفات العادية، ولكن لا تستخدمها في الكتابة الاكاديمية.

- You are absolutely beautiful.

Really

تستخدم للمبالغة مع الصفات العادية والصفات القوية.

- She is really bad. Her speech was really terrible.









AMERICAN

Quiz

1.	I like it. It is fantastic.	(very - absolutely)
2.	Oh my god. You look gorgeous.	(absolutely - really)
3.	Don't touch it. It's hot.	(very - absolutely)
4.	Everytime I see you, you're angry.	(really - very)
5.	Come watch with me, this show is	hilarious. (very - absolutely)
6.	I saw his house. It is enormous.	(really - very)

كورس القو





من قناة ذا اميركان انجليث

Passive Voice

اسم المفعول

يرفع	یکتب	يفعل	الفعل
يُرفع	یُکتب	يُفعل	اسم المفعول

الفعل	الماضي	اسم المفعول
play	play <mark>ed</mark>	is played
jump	jump <mark>ed</mark>	is jump <mark>ed</mark>
watch	watch <mark>ed</mark>	is watched
find	found	is found
ask	asked	is asked

تحويل الجملة إلى صيغة اسم المفعول

1. خالد يشرب الماء.

يُشرب الماء من قبل خالد. الماء يُشرب من قبل خالد.

2. أحود بلعب الكرة

تلعب الكرة من قبل أحمد.

- Tom fills the cup. توم يملئ الكوب The cup is filled by Tom. الكوب يُملئ من قبل توم
- Linda asks a question. ليندا تسأل سؤال A question is asked by Linda. سؤال يُسأل من قبل ليندا











Passive Voice

اسم المفعول

is written	مكتوب	یُکتب
is hit	مضروب	يُضرب

تكوين اسم المفعول

التصريف الثالث للفعل + Be

Young people read this magazine.	This magazine is read by young people.
Mr. Jeff plants many trees.	Many trees are planted by Mr. Jeff.
The students write the report.	The report is written by the students.
The barber cuts my hair.	My hair is cut by the barber.
The dog chases me.	I am chased by the dog.













Quiz

حول الجمل الآتية إلى صيغة اسم المفعول

1. Jack finds the purse.
2. The workers build the house.
·
3. Many people watch the movie.
•
4. My friends like me.
5. Dina washes the dishes.











Passive Voice

was written	كان يُكتب
was made	كان يُصنع

is written	یْکتب/مکتوب
is made	یُصنع/مصنوع

The window was broken.	كانت النافذة مكسورة.
He was crying because his wallet was stolen.	كان يبكي لأن محفظته قد سُرقت.
The vase was broken.	كانت المزهرية مكسورة.

حول الجمل التالية إلى صيغة اسم المفعول (المبنى للمجهول).

1. Peter delivered the mail.
2. Jill wrote a book.
3. The mice ate the cheese.
4. Mike painted the houses.
5. Ted crashed the car.









السؤال والنفى

الإثبات	النفي	
The houses are painted by Mike.	The houses are not painted by Mike.	حاضر
The houses were painted by Mike.	The houses were not painted by Mike.	ماضي

الإثبات	السؤال	
The houses are painted by Mike.	Are the houses painted by Mike?	حاضر
The houses were painted by Mike.	Where the houses painted by Mike?	ماضي

Change the sentences into negatives (N) or questions (Q)

1. The door is locked.	· (Q)
2. The library is located in the school.	· (N)
3. The bag was found by them.	· (N)
4. The picture are painted by Sarah.	· (Q)
5. She was satisfied with her dinner.	· (N)

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN







كورس القواعد

من قناۃ ذا امیرکان انجلش



Present Perfect

التكوين

Subject + have/has + past participle

She has washed the dishes.

هي غسلت الاطباق.

النفي

Subject + (have/has) not + past participle

She hasn't washed the dishes.

هي لم تغسل الاطباق.

السؤال

Have/Has + subject + past participle?

Has she washed the dishes?

هل غسلت الاطباق؟









Change the underlined words to the present perfect tense

1. She <u>works</u> for the company.	
2. He <u>lives</u> here for a year.	_•
3. I <u>help</u> mom to do the dishes.	_•
4. Tom <u>receives</u> presents for his birthday.	_•
5. They <u>invite</u> Mary to their party.	

AMERICAN

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على
YouTube App Store Google Play



Ask a question about each sentence and write an answer

You - sit on a table Have you sat on a table? (Q) Yes, I have. (A)		
Your mother - make spaghetti		(0)
No,	(A)	(Q)
Jason - see this movie?		(Q)
Yes,	(A)	_
They - be late for class		(Q)
No,	(A)	• •

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على App Store Google Play

AMERICAN







Past Simple vs Present Perfect

الاستخدام	الزمن
حدث انتهى وليس له علاقة بالحاضر	الماضي البسيط
حدث بدأ في الماضي ومازال له علاقة بالحاضر	المضارع التام

لمزيد من التفاصيل يرجى مراجعة الحلقة

المضارع التام	الماضي البسيط
I have done	ا <mark>did</mark>
لقد فعلت (حتى الآن)	لقد فعلت
She has called me three times.	She called me three times.
هي إتصلت بي ثلاث مرات. (حتى الآن)	هي إتصلت بي ثلاث مرات.
I have met my best friend when I was little. لقد عرفت صديقي المفضل عندما كنت صغيراً.	

Exercise

- 1. She to Spain last year to study Spanish. (went has gone)
- 2. I so many different types of chocolate, I think I'm an expert. (tried have tried)
- 3. I my leg last year. (broke have broken)
- 4. She her degree in 2003. (finished has finished)
- 5. I really my grandmother. She was an amazing woman. (loved have loved)
- 6. I hard from day one. I deserve a promotion. (worked have worked)







The answer

- 1. She went to Spain last year to study Spanish.
- 2. I have tried so many different types of chocolate, I think I'm an expert.
- 3. I broke my leg last year.
- 4. She finished her degree in 2003.
- 5. I really loved my grandmother. She was an amazing woman.
- 6. I have worked hard from day one. I deserve a promotion.

في الكلام الغير أكاديمي لا يوجد فرق بينهما

- I have broken my arm.
- I have done my homework.
- I ate most of the cake and I think I will finish it.

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على
YouTube App Store Google Play



كورس القواعد

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



When

Before قبل امحد

I go to work when the sun rises.	
I go to work before the sun rises.	زمن الحاضر
I go to work after the sun rises.	

الفعل يكون في زمن الحاضر قبل وبعد (after - before - when).

He ran when he saw the dog.	
He ran before he saw the dog.	زمن الماضي
He ran after he saw the dog.	

الفعل يكون في زمن الماضي قبل وبعد (after - before - when).

I will send you the report when I finish my meeting.	
I will send you the report before I finish my meeting.	زمن المستقبل
I will send you the report after I finish my meeting.	

بعد (after - before - when) نستخدم الزمن الحاضر للدلالة على المستقبل.

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على

YouTube App Store Google Play



Find the errors and correct the sentences

1. Mike eats breakfast after he took a shower	(present)
2. Ms. Brown will listen when her students wil	l read. (future)
3. John goes outside when he finished his wo	rk. (past)
4. I called Gina before I go to her house (p	ast)
5. He smiles when I laughed (present)	









Find the errors and correct the sentences

AMERICAN

1. The students will raise their hands after they their assignments. (complete)
2. Jane talked to her friend before she her homework. (start)
3. Tony cooks after he his hands. (wash)
4. The boy ate dinner before he his dog. (walk)
5. Mike will go to a party after he his shoes. (shine)
6. He plays computer games when he free time. (have)

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على
YouTube App Store Google Play







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Explanation



- How are you doing? = How are you?
- How about yourself? = How about you?

Pretty = Very أقوى في المعنى 🖈

- It was pretty good.
- It was very good.

How are you? — How have you been?

للسؤال عن شخص لم نقابله منذ فتره (أخباره منذ هذه الفتره إلى حد الآن)

للسؤال عن أخبار هذا الشخص في (الوقت الحالي)

الآن - الآن تحديداً 🖈 Right now



Where is my brother right now?

این اخی الآن؟

What are you doing



Go to your room right now! اذهب إلى غرفتك الآن تحديد Hi. How are you doing?





I'm fine. How about yourself?

I'm pretty good. Thanks for asking.







No problem. So, how have you been?

I've been great. What about you?







I've been good. I'm in school right now.









Part 1

What school do you go to?



Explanation



I go to ABC.

– It's ok. میئه ولیست جیده ولیست میئه



England الحرم الجامعي America الحرم الدراسي Do you like it there?



Good luck with school.





6

Thank you very much.

طريقة تعلم اللّغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاى تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Part 2

Explanation



I'm doing,well.

الحال يأتي بعد الفعل

X I'm doing good.

الصفة لا تأتي بعد الفعل

مثال

Please talk slow. X

Please talk slowly. ✓

Never been better.

لم اكن يوماً أفضل (كويس جداً)

How is it going?





I'm doing well. How about you?

Never been better.







So, how have you been lately?

I've actually been pretty good. You?







I'm actually in school right now.







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Which school do you attend?



Explanation



4

I'm attending ABC right now.

Are you enjoying it there?



It's not bad. = It's ok.



It's not bad. There are a lot of people there.

Good luck with that.





طريقة تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاى تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Part 1

Explanation



- May I.....? كثر تأدباً ★ أكثر تأدباً ★ Can I.....?
- This is him. X This is her.
 This is he. ✓ This is she.
 - I have been + ...ing



I have been working in a bank for four years.

أنا أعمل في بنك منذ أربع سنوات



ترجم أنا أشاهد التلفاز منذ ٣ ساعات



Hello, may I speak to Alice please?





1

This is she. How is it going?

I've been trying to call you all day.







Sorry about that. I was cleaning up.

It's okay.







So, what were you calling me about?







من قناة ذا امپركان انجلش

Part 1

Oh, I just wanted to see if you wanted to hang out tomorrow.



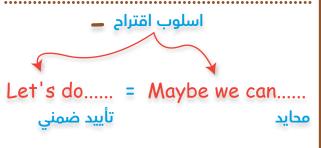
Explanation



يقضى وقت مع



Sure, what did you want to do?



....5

Maybe we can go see a movie or something.





That sounds like fun. Let's do it.

– Then إذاً

I'll see you tomorrow then.





See you then. Goodbye

طريقة تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كُل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاى تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.



ENGLISH

كورس المحادثة





من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Part 2

Explanation



Hi, how are you. Is Alice there?





....1

Speaking. What's up?

- Why haven't you answered the phone?
 - = Why didn't you anwser the phone?
- My bad = I'm sorry
 للتعبير عن الأعتراف بالخطأ
- Chores الأعمال المنزلية

Why haven't you answered the phone?







My bad, I had chores to do.

That's all right.







What was the reason for your call?







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Part 2

I want to do something tomorrow with you.



Explanation

یفکر فی شیء Have in mind ـ



...4∶

Sounds good. What did you have in mind?

الفرق بين

Think aboutیفکر فی شیء

Think of يخطر على باله

5

I was thinking about seeing a movie.



Okay, let's go see a movie.

حتى حينها Untill Then

Until then.





...6

Talk to you later.

طريقة تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بالترتيب الصحيح واختبارات بعد كل درس عن طريق تحميل التطبيق الخاص بنا. أكتب على متجر أبل أو جوجل بلاى تعلم اللغة الانجليزية.







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Part 1

السؤال عن كذا... (الطريقة ودية)

Explanation



In school

at school

I'm in the office. بداخل المكتب **T**



I'm at the park.





قد أكون بداخل الحديقة أو بالقرب منها

Feel good



Feel well



Emotional Felling

Physical Felling ~

رالشعور الجسدي (الصحة والمرض)

الشعور العاطفي (السعادة-الحزن-الابتهاج...)

My stomach is upset. حاضر = I have an upset stomach.

My stomach was upset.

= I had an upset stomach.

ماضي

Why weren't you at school yesterday?





....1

I wasn't really felling well.

What was wrong with you?





My stomach was upset.







من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Do you feel better now?



Explanation



بعد (لحد دلوقت)

3



I don't really feel too well yet.

Already تستخدم فی ای زمن

Do you want anything to make you fell better?







No, thanks. I already took some medicine.

I hope you feel better.





5

Thank you.



Why weren't you at school yesterday? I wasn't really felling will.

لماذا السؤال بـ Were والإجابة بـ Was



يمكنك مشاهدة الإجابة بالضغط هنا 🌝



ENGLISH

كورس المحادثة





من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

السؤال عن كذا... (الطريقة الأكثر خشونة)

Explanation



- بتغيب عن المدرسة Miss school
- Why did you...?

What reason do you have for ...?

سؤال بطريقة ودية

سؤال بطريقة خشنة

Why did you call me?

What reason do you have for calling me?

مثال

- How were you sick? كىف كنت مرىض؟
- Stomachache = Stomach ache

What reason do you have for missing school?





I was sick.







I had a stomachache











Did it get any better?



Explanation



- Under the weather.
 - Not feeling well.
- Earlier X Later للحقاً سابقاً



I'm still feeling under the weather.

Would you like anything for your stomach?





I took some medicine earlier.

Get better.





Thanks a lot.

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على





> Google play 🧰 App Store









من قناة ذا امیرکان انجلش

Part 1

Explanation



Did you hear the good news?





No, I haven't.

PromotionPromote

يرقي omote

I think I will promote Tom. He is a hardworking guy.



ترقية

• Did you really? بجد؟ • عقاً - فعلا - بجد

I met the president yesterday.

Did you?

Did you really?



I have me the president yesterday. Have you? Have you really?

I got a promotion at my job.





Did you really?

Seriously, I am so excited.













من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Explanation







I'm so happy for you.







Yes, you really deserved this.

- طريقة غير رسمية ?You think so Do you think so? طريقة رسمية أو اكاديمية
- You think so? 6
- Good for you. أحسنت I have passed the exam. Wow. Good for you.





Yes, Good for you

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على





Google play App Store









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Part 2

Explanation

Have you heard my good news?





I got a promotion at work earlier this week.





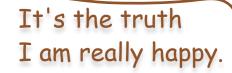
Is that right?

إذا جاء بعدها ضمير Congratulations on

Congratulations for إذا جاء بعدها فعل في معظم الاحوال



Congratulations for winning the game.







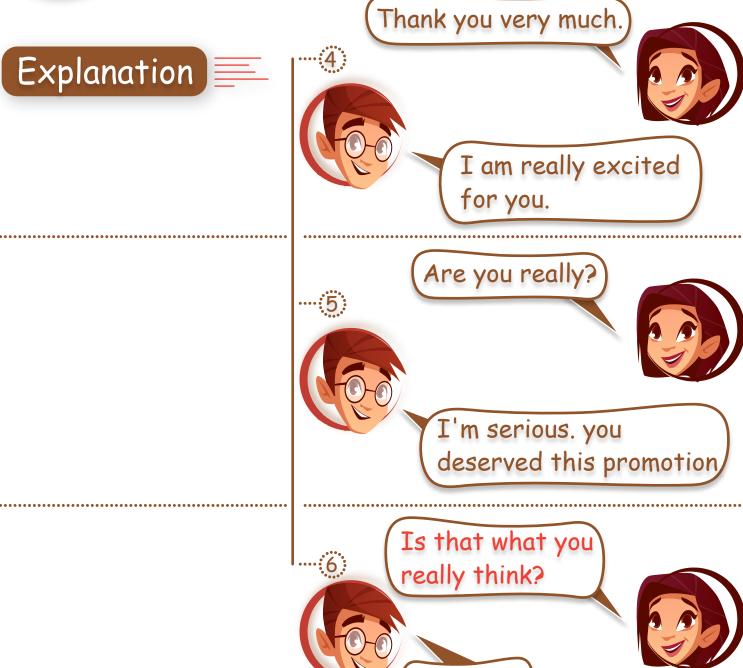
Congratulations on your promotion.





من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على







Yes, it is.







Explanation

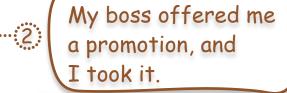
من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

I haven't told you what happened yet have I?





I haven't heard anything







Are you serious?

....3

Yes, I am readlly ecxited.





That's great Congratulations.





من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش







I appreciate that.



You have no idea how happy I am for you.



For real?





I believe you were the best choice for that promotion. I really do.

















Part 1

Explanation

الزي كله Outfit

کذا کذا کا The other

= A few کذا کذا Ago.

من کام یوم فاتو The other day

= A few days ago.

من كام ليلة فاتو The other night

A few nights ago.

من كام اسبوء فاتو The other week

= A few weeks ago.

Where did you get it?

= Where did you get it from?

You look reaally nice today.





Thank you. I just got this outfit the other day.

Really, where did you get it?





I got it from Macy's.

It's really nice.





Thanks again. You look nice today, too.





من مّناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Thank you. I just got these shoes today.







All Star Chuck Taylors



Really? What kind of shoes are they?



These are called All Star Chuck Taylors.



کذا کذا کا Buy myself = Buy کذا کذا for myself



I really like those. How much did they cost?

They were about forty dollars





I think I'm going to go buy myself a pair.











من مّناة ذا اميركان انجلش



I absolutely love what you're wearing today.







You do? I just bought this outfit a couple days ago.

Seriously, it looks really nice on you. Where did you buy it from?





I bought it from the Macy's at the Santa Anita mall.

I really like that outfit.





Thank. I think you look nice oday, too.





من مّناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Part 2

Explanation



What are they

What kid are they

للسؤال عن ماركه الحذاء

Chucks



Thank you. I just bought these new shoes earlier today.





Those are nice. What are they?

These are some Chuks.





Those are great. How much were they?

I got them for forty.





I think I might go and find my own pair of Chuks.











من قناة ذا امیرکان انجلش



Part 3

Explanation



بدید New طازة Brand new

یختار Pick out

I think that you look very cute today.





Is that right? This is a brand new outfit.

What store did you get it from?





I went to Macy's and picked it out.

I love your outfit.





Well, I think you look nice today too.





من مّناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Part 3

Explanation

Thanks. I found these new shoes earlier at the store.





I think that those are some really nice shoes. What kid are they?

These are Chuks.





Your shoes look really nice. How much did you get them for?

They only cost me about forty dollars





I'm going to go get a pair for myself.









ENGLISH

كورس المحادثة



من مّناة ذا اميركان انجلش





Hi, could you help me find a place where I could buy some lunch?







Help someone do somthing

Help someone to do somthing

Could you help me find a place

= Could you help me to find a place

ىعد كذا Past



Sure! What kind of food would you like?

I was thinking of pizza or something else Italian, maybe.





I know the perfect place.

Good! Where is it?





It's right past that last building on the left. Do you want me to go with you?





من قناة ذا اميركان انجلس



Part 1



That would be great.





Glad you asked me to join you. This will be fun!









من مّناة ذا اميركان انجلش





Explanation

تستخدم للتعجب Man! سواء للراجل او للست

الأسماء الموصولة

هذا هو الرجل الذي احترمه هل رأيت القرد الذّي قفِز في الماء هذه هي الشركة التي أعمل بها

لأننا نتحدث عن مكان يكون الاسم الموصول where معناه الذي - التي

مثال This is the company where I work.

Close by = Near by At a short distance

للتعبير عن القرب في المسافة It's very close = It's very near.

مثال

My Mom and I very near.

أنا ووالدتي على مسافة صغيره جدا من بعض (دلالة على قرب المكان)

للتعبير عن القرب المعنوي My Mom and I are very close. انا ووالدتي مقربين من بعض (علاقتنا حلو جدا) Man! I'm hungry. Do you know a good place to have lunch?





Yes, I know a great place. What types of food do you

Mexican, Japanese or Chinese would be great.





Oh, I know a place where you might like to eat.

Is it close by?





It's down a block on the right; can I show you the way?





من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





Ok, I'd love the company.





This will work out well. I'm getting hungry just thinking about it.









من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





Part 3

Explanation



Know

إذا كنت تعرف شخص ما او شيء ما معرفه كويسة

مثال

Do you know a good locksmith? هل تعرف قفال كويس (صانع ومصلح الأقفال)

يسمع عن Know of

مثال

Do you know of a good locksmith? هل تسمع عن قفال کویس Let's have some lunch; do you know of a great restaurant somewhere?





I'm hungry, too.

What types of food sound

good?

Maybe just a quick sandwich, salad, or something.





I have a great idea of where you might like to go.

Can we walk there?





It's on the second floor.

May I join you?





من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Part 3



Of course! Let's go.





Let's hurry. I'm starving!











من قناة ذا امیرکان انجلش



Part 1

Explanation



Switch = Change = Shift

Did you go to school today?





Of course. Did you?

I didn't want to, so I didn't.





That's sad, but have you gone to the movies recently?

That's a switch.





I'm serious, have you?





من مّناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Explanation



Then اذن No, I haven't. Why?





I really want to go to the movies this weekend?

So. Go then.





I really don't want to go by myself.

Well anyway, do you plan on going to school tomorrow?





No, I think I'm going to go to the movies.











من مّناۃ ذا امپرکان انجلش



Explanation



Go - Make للذهاب إلى مكان ما

Go somewhere

تذهب إلى المكان كذا

Make somewhere

أستطعت الذهاب في الوقت المحدد

مثال

Did you go to the meeting? هل ذهبت إلى الإجتماع؟

Did you make it to the meeting? هل ذهبت في الوقت المحدد؟

إذا كنت مدعوى إلى شيء معين ولكن حصل ظرف ولا تسطّيع الذهاب

مثال

Sorry I can't make it.

للتشحيع

You can make it.

تستطيع النجاح في تجاوز هذا الأمر سواء كَأْن مأزقَ أوَّ تحدي

مثال

I believe you can make it. أنا مؤمن أنك تستطيع تجاوز هذا الأمر Did you make it to school today?





I always do. Did you go to school today?

No, I didn't.





You should have, but have you seen any movies lately?

That was an <mark>odd</mark> change of subject.





Maybe it was, but answer the question.





من مّناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Explanation |



نصحية لما مضي Should have کان پجدر بك مثال

You should have called me. کان پجدر بك أن تتصل ہی

You should have apologized to your friend.

كان يجدر بك أن تعتذر لصديقك

غریب - مفاجیء Odd

Change of subject.

تغير للموضوع

What's stopping you then? مع الكلام الغير رسمي

Why don't you go then? مع الكلام الرسمي No not recently.





I want to go to see a Movie this weekend.

What's stopping you then?





I don't want to go alone.

So, will you be at school tomorrow?





No. I want to go the movies instead?















Part 3

Explanation



یزعج - یضایق Bother

مثال

Is he bothering you?

Bother to

بتعمل حاجه بالرغم من ان لا يوجد اي سبب لعملها او بالرغم من انها تأخذ جهد كبير وتأتي في الغالب في النفي أو السؤال

مثال

It was a stupid question, I didn't even bother to reply.

Has anyone even bothered to ask John about this opinion?

Feel like = Want = Desire

مثال

She was rude, I felt like leaving هى كانت فظه وأنا أردت المغادرة

I feel like Chinese food. أنا أريد طعام صيني Did you even bother to go to school today?





Yeah, I went.
Did you go?

No, I didn't feel like it.





That's nice, have you been to the movies lately?

No, but that was a random change of subject.





It may have been random, but have you?





من مّناة ذا اميركان انجلش



I haven't lately.





See a movie = Catch a movie

Film > UK Movie > US The pictures > Australia

Cinema > UK Theatre > US



I would love to catch a movie this weekend.

So then, why don't you just go?





I don't want to see a movie by myself.

Okay, so are you going to school tomorrow?





I think I might just go to the movies.











من مّناۃ ڈا امپرکان انجلش



Explanation



Talk to = Talk with

لا بوحد فرق

Rush off

إجبار شخص على المغادرة سريعا مثال

The waiter rushed us off the moment we paid the bill. دفعنا النادل للخروج فور دفعنا لفاتورة الحساب It was nice talking to you.





Why are you trying to rush me off the phone?

I really have to go.





I still want to talk to you?

I have things to do.





Like What?

















Nosey

یتدخل فی شیء لا یعنیه (متطفل)

Nosey = Busybody = Nosey Parker

قاسی (فظ) Harsh

مثال

حقيقة قاسية Harsh truth

Don't be nosey.





I'm not. I just want to

Well, it's really none of your business.





That's harsh.

I'm sorry, but I Have to go.





Fine.















Explanation



Why the rush

لماذا العطلة؟

What's the rush?

لا تتعج (تمهل)

پخلص کذا Get off....

مثال

Get off work

ينهى العمل

Get off the phone

ينهى المكالمة

I'll talk to later.





What's the rush?

I have to get off the phone now.





I'm not ready to get off the phone with you.

There other things I need to take care of.





What is it that you need to do?















Please don't be nosey.



Explanation



مثال

I have to go to the bathroom. على أن أذهب إلى الحمام

للتشديد على المغادرة - الذهاب I've got to go مثال

My god look at the time, I've got to go to work. يا إلهي أنظر إلى الوقت، أنا مضطر للذهاب إلى العمل

تستخدم للعامية فقط I gotta go = I've got to go

> أسلوب فظ gotta go مع السلامة - أنا ماشي يلا معطلكش - طير أنت



I'm not being nosey, It's just a question.

You don't need to worry about that.





I am very sorry, but I must qo.





I guess.













ENGLISH

من مّناۃ ذا امیرکان انجلش

المستوى الثاني



Explanation



Invitation = Invitation card کارت الدعوہ مثال

I guess my invitation got lost in the mail.

أظن ان دعوتي قد ضاعت في البريد

May I see your invitation, please? هل تسمح أن أرى كارت الدعوه الخاص بك، من فضلك؟

Is that right? = Is that a face هل هذا الكلام حقيقي؟

للتعبير عن الدهشه John broke up with Mary.

جون أنفصل عن ماري

Is that right?

هل هذا حقیقی؟ - ده بجد؟

للسخريه من كلام شخص آخر Did you know that Michael Jackson stole my song?

هل تعلم ان مايكل جاكسون قد سرق اغنيتي؟ Wow, is that right?

Bad bad Michael!

واو، حقاً؟ سیء سیء یا مایکل

Has anyone told you about Jessica's party coming up?





I was told about it already.

I'm just waiting for my

invitation.

Is that right? I already got my invitation from her earlier.





I believe that she will give me the invitation today.

Are you even going to go?





Yeah, it sounds like it's going to be the best party of the year.





من مّناۃ ذا امپرکان انجلش





Exactly, it seems like it's going to be loads of fun.





Loads of = Much = Many الكثىر من...



When exactly does the party start?

The invitation says it starts at 08:00 p.m.





Has she given out a lot of invitations yet?

I have no idea she hasn't given out many though.





I'm planning on going, but I really need her to give me my invitation.















Part 2

Explanation

Have you heard about Jessica's party on Saturday?





I've heard about it, but I'm still waiting for my invitation.

Really? I got mine from her this morning.





I'm guessing that she's going to give me my invitation today or tomorrow.

You're probably right, do you intend on going to the party?





I want to. I heard it's going to be really fun.





من مّناۃ ذا امیرکان انجلش



I know, It does sound pretty awesome.







من المفرض أن ...

Give out

يعطي - يوزع

مثال

I gave out samples and everyone said it was the bomb. لقد وزعت عينات وكل الناس قالوا انها الأفضل

Give out

يتوقف عن العمل بسبب خل معين مثال

My computer just gave out, I think I'll have to buy a new one حاسب الآلي توقف على العمل أظن انه سيَّتوجب على شراء جهاز جديد

People's hearts give out all the time, man.

يحدث كثيراً ان تتوقف قلوب الناس على العمل



Well, when does the party

It's supposed to start at about eight.





How many invitations has she given out?

I really don't know, but I don't think she gave out that many yet.





I really want to go, so I hope that she gives me my invitation soon.















Part 3

Explanation

Later = Later on

لاحقاً

خطة - يخطط Plan

مثال

I am planning a trip to Europe. أنا أخطط رحلة لاوروبا

يخطط أن Plan to

مثال

I am planning to go to Europe. أنا أخطط أن أذهب لاوروبا

يخطط ل Plan on

مثال

I am planning on going to Europe.

أنا أخطط للذهاب إلى لاوروبا

Plan to do...

أخطط أن أفعل ...

Plan on doing...

أخطط لـ فعل ...

I intend to go Europe.

انتوى أن أذهب للوروبا

I intend on going to Erope. أنتوى الذهاب إلى اوروبا Hey, did you hear about Jessica's party this weekend?





Yeah, but I'm still waiting for my invitation.

Oh really? She gave me mine earlier today.





Well, she'll probably just give me my invitation later on today.

Yeah, so are you planning on going?





I think so. It sounds like it's going to be a lot of run









It really does. I can't Wait.







Come up = About to happen شيء على وشك الحدوث مثأل

You know what holiday is coming up, don't you? أنت تعرف أي إجازه على وشك أن تأتى اليس كذلك؟

Come up يقترب يقترب من Come up Come up with یاتی بـ مثال

Mark come up to me and whispered in my ear.

مارك أقترب منى وهمس في اذني

On the subway, a man come up to me to start a conversation.

في المترو، اقترب منى رجل ليبدأ محادثة

I can come up with good excuse. یمکننی أن آتی باعذار جیده



What time does the party

It starts at 8 o'clock.





Oh, well, how many people has she given invitation to so far?

I'm not sure, but I don't think she's given out that many.





Well, hopefully she'll give me my invitation later on today.









LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE





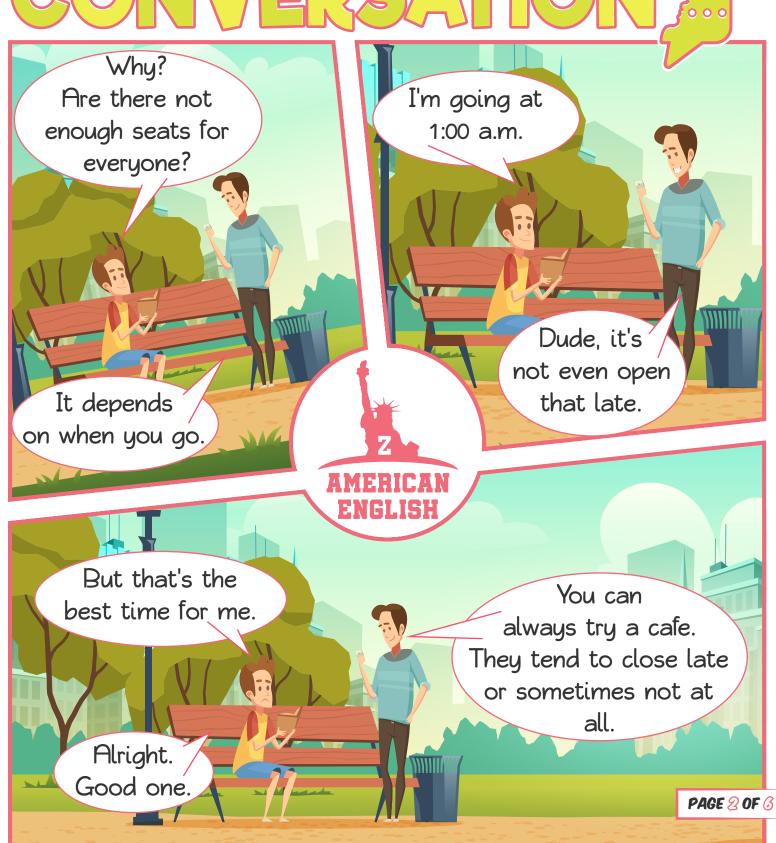








LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE













LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION)...

EXPLANATION

"What do you think you're doing?" Is not a real question. It's just a way to show that you're surprised or displeased with someone's action.

When people are angry, they usually say "What the <u>heck</u> do you think you're doing?"

The word heck, is the polite way of saying "hell". Don't say hell, it's not polite.

"I can't study at home, because my <u>family</u> talks so loudly." The word "family" is a collective noun.

Collective nouns are names of collections of people or things.

Examples

- Team = a collection of players.
- Staff = a collection of people who work in the same place.
- Flock = a collection of birds.
- Etc.

PAGE 8 OF 6











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION

EXPLANATION

Collective nouns can be thought of as single or plural nouns.

Sometimes we can use collective nouns as single.

• My family talks.

We added (s) because we treated the word "family" as a single noun.

And sometimes we will use it as plural.

• Saw a flock of sheep.

The verb that follows will not need an extra (s).

"I'll give it a shot" That's an idiom

Meaning: to give something a shot is to try to do it.

"Dude" Is American English slang for "guy" or "man" or in other countries like Australia or England "mate".

"They tend to close late"

Tend to do something means: to frequently do it.

You can think of it as saying "usually".

PAGE 4 OF 6











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Hey, what do you think you're doing?

أنت، ماذا تظن نفسك فاعلاً؟

I can't study at home, because my family talks so loudly.

لا أستطيع الدراسة في المنزل، لأن أفراد عائلتي يتحدثون بصوت عال.

Well, study at the library then

حسناً، ادرس في المكتبة إذن.



Yes, it's always really quiet نعم، انها حقاً هادئة دائماً.

I'll give it a shot today. سوف أقوم بتجربتها اليوم.

When you do, make sure you get a good seat.

عند القيام بذلك، تأكد من حصولك على مقعد جيد.



PAGE S OF 3











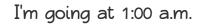
LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Why? Are there not enough seats for everyone?

لماذا؟ ألا توجد مقاعد كافية للجميع؟

It depends on when you go.

ُ ذلك يعتمد على وقت ذِهابك.



سوف أذهب في الواحدة صباحاً.

Dude, it's not even open that late.

يا صاحبيَ، لن تكون مفتوحة في ذلك الوقت المتأخر.

But that's the best time for me.

ولكن هذا هو أفضل وقت بالنسبة لي.

You can always try a cafe.

They tend to close late or not at all.

يمكنك دائما تجربة مقهى. عادةً ما يفضلون الإغلاق في وقت متأخر أو لا يغلقون أبداً.



PAGE 3 OF 3











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE













LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE













LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION ...

EXPLANATION

"Can you please shut up?" The word "shut up" isn't usually polite. He was angry. That's why he used the word "shut up".

He could have said other things and would have been much nicer.

Example

- Could you please speak a bit quieter?
- I'm sorry, would you mind keeping it down?

"Maybe if you ask nicely" It means you admit that what you're doing is not ideal but you aren't happy with the method of bringing your attention to it.

It's like saying "Ok, I know my behavior isn't the best, but I don't appreciate the way you're talking to me".

PAGE 3 OF 6











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION...

EXPLANATION

"I have no interest in splitting hairs" That's an idiom.

If we say that someone is splitting hairs, what we actually mean is they are trying to argue about very small and unimportant details.

Example

• A: The president is 64 years old.

B: No, you're wrong. He is only 63 and half.

A: No, I'm sure he's 64 years old.

B: No, listen to me. He is 63 and half.

A: No, 64.

B: No, 63 and half.

As you can see, arguing about that is a waste of time. It's splitting hairs.

"I'm sorry that your parents didn't teach you how to be nice" This is a very annoying statement.

It's like he's saying. "Well, it seems you are fixating on me having to say sorry. Ok, I will give you the sorry that you're looking for but you're not gonna like it".











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Can you please shut up?

من فضلك هل يمكنك ان تغلق فمك.

Maybe if you ask nicely, I will!

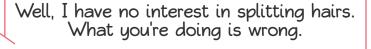
ربها اذا سألت بلطف ، سأفعل!

This is a library, so you have to shut up.

هذه مكتبة ، لذا عليك أن تصمت.

I don't know if I have to.

ُ لا أعرف إذا كان على ذلك.



حسنًا، ليس لدي النية في الدخول بجدال غير مجدي. ما تفعّله خطأ.

I didn't know laughing was a crime.

لم أكن أعرف أن الضحك كان جريمة.

It's a crime when you do it in the library.

إنها جريمة عندما تفعل ذلك في المكتبة.

You're just jealous, because I'm having a good time, and you're not.

أنت فقط تشعر بالغيرة، لأننى أمر وقتًا ممتعًا، وأنت لا تفعل

PAGE S OF 3



YouTube











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Nope, that's not it. Try again.

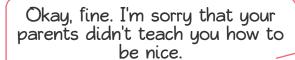
كلا، ليست هذه. حاول مرة أخرى.

I'll shut up if you say you're sorry.

سأصوت إذا قلت إنك آسف.

Sorry for what? If anything, you should say sorry.

آسف على ماذا؟ إذا كان لابد من الاعتذار، فانت من يجب عليه أن يعتذر.



حسنا. أنا آسف لأن والديك لم يعلماك كيف تكون لطيفًا.

Alright, that's it. I'm getting a librarian.

هذا يكفى، سوف أحضر أمين مكتبة.

Ohh, a librarian. Scary!

أوه، أمين مكتبة! أخفتني.

PAGE 3 OF 3













LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE













LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE













LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION ...

EXPLANATION

A: Hey, Steve. Do you know where I can look for used cars?

B: To buy?

A: What else?

"What else?" This way, you express that you're surprised by the question. It's like saying "Isn't it clear already? Why do you have to ask?".

We could use another word in this situation, the word is "duh".

Duh means "of course" - "what else" - "same thing".

"There is a dealership that sells used cars on Victoria street"
The word dealership comes from the word deal.

When you go buy a car, you're making a deal.

Example

I will take this car for this amount of money. Do we have a deal?

PAGE 8 OF 7











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION ...

EXPLANATION

The person who sells you the car, we call him" a dealer".

A dealer is a person who sells goods.

A dealership is the company that has the permission to sell you these cars.

"I'm down. Can you go with me?"

I'm down is a slang term that we use to show agreement.

We can use both "up" or "down" to show agreement.

For example, I can say "I'm up for it"

"I'm up for it" means "count me in" - "include me" - "I'm OK with it".

We can also say "I'm down with that".

I'm down with that means "I like that" - "I'm OK with that" - "I agree to that".

"Shoot me a text" That's a slang term and a cool way of saying "Send me a text".

"You owe me" Here means "I am doing you a favor" so you owe me a favor.

PAGE 4 OF 7











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Hey, Steve. Do you know where I can look for used cars?

أهلا, ستيف, هل تعلم أين يمكنني البحث عن سیارات مستعملة؟

What else?

وهل هناك سبب آخر؟

To buy?

لتشتريها؟



Hmm, you could always check online. My friend bought a car from Craigslist.

ممم, يمكنك دائما البحث عبر الإنترنت, صديقي

أشتري سيارة عن طريق كريغسليست .

Yeah, I was thinking about that. Do you know any other way though?

اها, كنت أفكر بهذا, هل تعرف أي طرق أخرى؟



There is a dealership that sells used cars on Victoria street.

مناك وكالة لبيع السيارات المستعملة في شارع فیکتوریا

PAGE S OF 7



YouTube









LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Where in Victoria street? I have never seen one.

أين تحديدا بشارع فيكتوريا؟ لم أرى أياً منها.

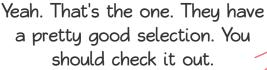
It's on the corner of Abby and Victoria.

انها في زاوية آبي وفيكتوريا.

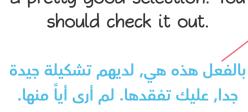


Oh, by the Burger King?

اها, بالقرب من برجر كينج؟



جدا, عليك تفقدها. لم أرى أياً منها.





PAGE 3 OF 7











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

I'm down. Can you go with me?

يناسبني تماما. هلا أتيت معي؟

Sure. I am free tomorrow and Thursday. Shoot me a text.

بالتأكيد, أنا متاح غدا و يوم الخميس, راسلني.



Will do. man. Thanks. سأفعل, شكرا يا رجل.

> Sure thing, bro. You owe me, though. تذكر أنت مدين لي بواحدة.

Hahaha, but you'll never collect. ها ها ها ها، دين لن تسترده أبداً.



حقیقی.



PAGE 77 OF 77















































LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION ...

EXPLANATION

A: What's up man?

B: Nothing much.

When you say nothing much in response to someone asking how you're doing. It means "Nothing important".

B: How are you doing?

A: Better than I deserve.

When you are happy with how everything is going in your life, you can use that "Better than I deserve" or "Can't complain".

Can't complain means you're satisfied with how everything is going in your life.

"To what do I owe the pleasure?" This is a good way to ask why someone is calling.

To what do I owe the pleasure is used when you want to ask why someone is contacting you.

If we say "Why are you calling me?" That could be very rude. It's like you're saying "I don't want to hear from you. Stop calling me".

PAGE 4 OF 8











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION

EXPLANATION

"I was wondering if you could hook me up at the place you work" Hook me up is a phrasal verb. It has several meanings.

In American English when you say hook someone up with something. It means that you will give them something through your connection. Your connection of people, or contacts.

"You're the bomb!" When we say that something or someone is the bomb. That's slang for saying "you're cool" - "You're awesome" - "you're great".

"I'm learning to keep my chin up."

To keep your chin up is an idiom that means "that you're trying to remain happy, cheerful and to keep having hope especially in difficult times".

PAGE S OF 8











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Hey Mark. What's up man?

مرحباً مارك, كيف حالك.

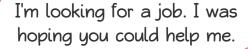
Hi, Jack. Nothing much. How are you doing?

أهلاً, جاك. لا جديد عندي. كيف هي أحوالك؟



Better than I deserve. To what do I owe the pleasure?

كل شئ على أفضل حال. سررت بأتصالك.



أبحث عن وظيفة. كنت أتمنى أن تستطيع مساعدتي.



بالتأكيد, كيف يمكنني مساعدتك؟



Well, I was wondering if you could hook me up at the place you work.

حسناً, كنت أتسائل إن كان بإمكانك أن تتوسط لى للحصول على وظيفة في مكان عملك.













LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

No problem. I don't know if they're hiring, but I'll find out.

ليست هناك مشكلة. لا أعلم إذا كانوا يقومون بالتعيين الأن, ولكنى سأتفقد ذلك.

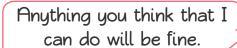
Thanks man, you're the bomb!

شكرا لك يا رجل, أنت الأفضل ` على الأطلاق.



What kind of job are you interested in doing?

ما هي طبيعة العمل التي تهتم بالقيام بها؟



أي شيء تعتقد أني أستطيع فعله سيفي بالغرض.

Can't you be a little more specific?

هل يمكنك أن تكون أكثر تحديدا.



I wish I could, man but honestly any thing would be fine.

أتمنى لو كنت أستطيع, صدقنى يا رجل أي شئ سيكون جيد بالنسبة لي.

PAGE 77 OF 83











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

That bad, ha?

ألهذه الدرجة, ها؟

Well, I'm learning to keep my chin up.

حسنا, مازلت أتمسك بالأمل.

Good man. I'll talk to my boss in the morning and get back to you.

جيد. سأتحدث إلى رئيسي بالعمل صباحا ومن ثَم سأُخبرك

Thanks, man. A friend in need is a friend indeed.

شكرا يا رجل, الصديق وقت الضيق.



بالتأكيد. هل هناك شئ آخر أستطيع مساعدتك به؟ ُ

No. I'm waiting to hear from you.

لا. في أنتظار ردك.

Alright, take care.

حسناً, أعتنى بنفسك.

Yeah, you too.

سأفعل, وأنت أيضاً.



PAGE 83 OF 83



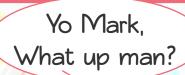








LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE





Hey Jack, I was about to call you? What's the word?

Okay, I talked to my boss. I will text you his phone number.

No, he didn't mention any vacancy at the moment, but he said he would talk to you.

All good. Got some good news for you by the way.

> Brilliant. Spill it, Jay

Thanks a lot, bud. Did he say he has an open position?

That's great! Hey, thanks again man.

PAGE (1 OF 83











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION)...



Online? Where? There are many job search websites.



Just Google
"Jobs in Cairo" and you'll
find some.

You can do it on your smartphone, you know.

TO BE CONTINUED.

AMERICAN ENGLISH

> Okay, I'll try that when I get home.

I know, but I think it's better at home, thanks again.

PAGE 2 OF 8











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION

EXPLANATION

"Yo Mark, What up man?" Yo is slang and we use it for 3 main purposes.

- First usage of Yo is to greet someone. It's like saying "hello".
- Second usage of Yo is to attract someone's attention.
 You want someone to pay attention to you. Or perhaps someone is not looking at you and you want them to turn their heads to your direction.

Yo in this usage, it is equal to saying "hey".

• Third usage of Yo is to express excitement. It's like saying "Wow".

"I was about to call you? What's the word?"

What's the word is slang and we use it to ask someone how they are doing. It's like saying "how are you", "howdy", "how is it going", "what's up", "what's happening", "how are things" and all of that.

PAGE 8 OF 8











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION...

EXPLANATION

A: All good. Got some good news for you by the way.

B: Brilliant. Spill it, Jay.

Brilliant is a word that we can use to express happiness or satisfaction. Use it the same way you use, awesome, great, amazing.

Spill it is slang for "talk" - "say it".

We can also use another word similar to this and say "spit it out".

Of course we don't want the person to eject saliva out of their mouths, but we want them to hurry up and talk.

Jay is a nickname for Jack.

"Thanks a lot, bud. Did he say he has an open position?"
The word bud is short for buddy.

Buddy means "close friend".

PAGE 4 OF 8











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION ...

EXPLANATION

"Thanks a lot, bud. Did he say he has an open position?"

An open position is a vacant job.

a vacant job means a job that nobody is filling at the moment, so it's available for someone to come and take it.

"No, he didn't mention any vacancy at the moment."

The word vacancy is the noun from vacant.

PAGE & OF &











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Yo Mark, What up man?

هلا مارك, أخبارك يا صديقى.

Hey Jack, I was about to call you? What's the word?

أهلاً جاك, كنت على وشك الأتصال بك؟ ٔ أخبارك يا صديقي.

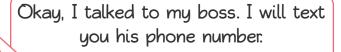


All good. Got some good news for you by the way.

بخير, بالمناسبة لدى أخبار جيدة لك.



رائع, أسعدني بها.



حسناً, لقد تكلمت لرئيسي بالعمل. سوف أرسل لك رقم هاتفه.



Thanks a lot, bud. Did he say he has an open position?

شكرا جزيلاً, لكن. هل قال أن لديه فرصة عمل متاحة.

PAGE 6 OF 8











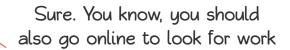
LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

No, he didn't mention any vacancy at the moment, but he said he would talk to you.

لا. لم يذكر شئ عن فرص عمل متاحة حاليا, ولكنه قال أنه سيتحدث إليك.

> That's great! Hey, thanks again man.

> هذا رائع! شكرا لك مجددا يا رجل.



بكل تأكيد, أتعلم, يجب عليك البحث عبر الإنترنت عن وظيفة.

Online? Where?

عبر الإنترنت؟ أين؟





PAGE 77 OF 83











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

There are many job search websites.

هناك العديد من المواقع الإلكترونية للبحث عن وظائف.

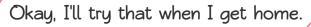
Cool. Do you know any by name?

رائع. هل تعرف أسماء أيا منها.

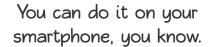


Just Google "Jobs in Cairo" and you'll find some.

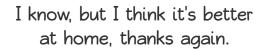
فقط أستخدم محرك البحث جوجل ابحث عن "وظائف بالقاهرة" وستجد البعض منها.



حسنا. سأجرب حين أصل البيت.



أتدري, يمكنك البحث من خلال هاتفك الذكى



أعلم هذا, لكنى أعتقد أنه من الأفضل البحث بالمنزل, شكرا مجددا.



PAGE 83 OF 83











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Man, Am I excited? I've got my first job interview.



Interview for what?

You know, it's an internship for a big company.



Wow, that's impressive. I hope you get it. Fingers crossed.

Well, thanks. I'm preparing for the interview by - you know - practicing with my sister.





What exactly are you doing? How are you practicing?













LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

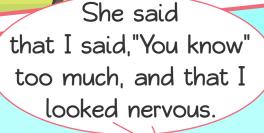
We're doing mock interviews.

It sure is. She recorded our first interview, and pointed out things that umm - you know - I should avoid.



Is it helpful?

What are some of the things she saw?





Oh really, that's strange because you're the only one I know who doesn't use fillers in his speech.









PAGE 2 OF 100



LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Í know, right? Í was like no, I don't do that, but she was kind of like, yeah you do.



Dude. dude. Let me just stop you there. I was just being sarcastic. Your sister is right, you overuse fillers.



Hmmm. Well alright then. Time to put an end to that.



Cool! That should help. Good luck my friend.

Thanks, man. Appreciate it.













LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION

EXPLANATION

"Man, Am I excited?" That wasn't a real question.

He is not actually saying "Do you think I'm excited?" or "Do I look like I'm excited?"

No, he wasn't asking at all. So why did he say "am I excited?" instead of "I am excited"?

He could have said that, but it's more common to express excitement in the form of a question.

Example

- Wow, it's so beautiful.Wow, is it beautiful?
- My god, he is so annoying.My god, is he annoying?

"It's an internship for a tech company."

An internship is when you get a position in a company as a student or a trainee. You work there sometimes without getting paid because you want to learn and gain more experience.

PAGE 4 OF 100











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

"Wow, that's impressive. I hope you get it. Fingers crossed."

We can say another word for "impressive" like (awesome, admirable, spectacular or excellent).

"Fingers crossed" This is a hand gesture that we commonly use to wish someone good luck, it's like saying "I wish you good luck".

"We're doing mock interviews."

The word "mock" can be used to mean "laugh at someone or something" or "to create something similar to the original object. To make a good copy of it (a replica)".

Example

- It's not okay to mock and disrespect others.
 - Mock = laugh at or tease
- We always give students mock exams.

Mock = replica - a similar copy

PAGE S OF 100











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION...

EXPLANATION

"That's strange because you're the only one I know who doesn't use fillers in his speech."

The word fillers, as the name suggests is something we put in a place to fill it.

When you talk, sometimes we need to think of the next word or we need to choose words carefully. We will end up having a gap in our speech. To fill this gap we use what we call "fillers".

Fillers words like (you know - uh - mmm - like) we use them to avoid stopping when we talk.

Nowadays teenagers overuse fillers in their speech. It's disgusting. You will hear someone saying.

• I was like you know happy but he was like you know ummm not so much and then we you know told him like come on.

It's just hurtful to hear. So, it's okay to use fillers every now and then but don't over do it.

PAGE 3 OF 100











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION

EXPLANATION

"Let me just stop you there. I was just being sarcastic. Your sister is right, you overuse fillers."

His friend was just using sarcasm. He was being sarcastic.

Sarcasm is when you say the opposite of what you want to say in order to make fun of someone.

Example

- You look very tired in the morning and you keep yawning.
- I look at you and say; wow, I love your energy in the morning.

The question is: do I mean it? Do I love your energy?

No, it is the opposite of what I want to say.

You have no energy. So this is sarcasm and I was being sarcastic.

PAGE 7 OF 100











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Man, Am I excited? I've got my first job interview.

یا رجل, کم انا متحمس؟ لقد حصلت على أول مقابلة عمل لي.

Interview for what?

مقابلة عمل من أحل ماذا؟

You know, it's an internship for a big company.

أتعلم، إنها فترة تدريب لدى شركة كبيرة.

Wow, that's impressive. I hope you get it. Fingers crossed.

هذا رائع, أتمنى حصولك عليها. دعواتي لك من أجل ذلك.

Well, thanks. I'm preparing for the interview by - you know - practicing with my sister.

> شكرا, أنا أحضر لمقابلة العمل عن طريق التدرب مع أختى.

> > What exactly are you doing?

ما الذي تفعله تحديدا؟ كيف تتدرب؟

How are you practicing?

PAGE 83 OF 100



YouTube









LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

We're doing mock interviews.

نحن نتدرب بطريقة مماثلة تماما للمقابلات الفعلية.

Is it helpful?

هل هذه الطريقة مفيدة؟

It sure is. She recorded our first interview, and pointed out things that umm - you know - I should avoid.

بالتأكيد. قامت بتسجيل أولى مقابلتنا, وأشارت إلى ممم أشياء على تجنبها

> What are some of the things she saw?

أخبرني ما هي بعض ملاحظاتها.

She said that I said, "You know" too much, and that I looked nervous.

لقد قالت لى انى أتكلم أكثر مما ينبغي, وأن التوتر ظاهر على.

Oh really, that's strange because you're the only one I know who doesn't use fillers in his speech. Is it helpful?

حقاً, هذا يبدو غريبا لأنك أنت الوحيد في من أعرفهم الذي يتحدث دون التوقف أثناء كلامه.

PAGE 9 OF 100















LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

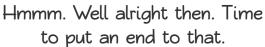
I know, right? I was like no, I don't do that, but she was kind of like, yeah you do.

حقاً, أليس كذلك؟ كنت أقول لها لا أنا أفعل هذا, ولكنها كانت تصر علي فعلي هذا الشئ.



Dude, dude. Let me just stop you there. I was just being sarcastic. Your sister is right, you overuse fillers.

صديقي, صديقي. دعني اوقفك هنا. لقد كنت أمازحك. أختك على حق. لديك الكثير من الوقفات أثناء الكلام.



مممم. حسنا إذا. حان الوقت لأتوقف عن هذا.

> Cool! That should help. Good luck my friend.

> > رائع! سيساعدك هذا. حظا طيباً يا صديقي.



شكرا, يا رجل أقدر لك هذا.

PAGE MO OF MO























LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE



Yeah, it was pretty easy. Plus, I always use GPS.

Sure. My name is Mark. I graduated from Cairo University in 2016. I'm doing my master's degree in business administration. I like working with people. I'm a great people person. I'm very responsible

and I always aspire to meet the expectations that my managers have of me.

Sure, was it easy to find the office?

Alright, why don't we start by you telling me a little about yourself?













LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

I can tell that your practiced saying that.



Haha you bet but, don't worry. I've seen worse.

Sorry. I just like to be always prepared and hey, doesn't this itself show my devotion?

You're right, it kinda does.

Not to toot my own horn, but I really think that I'm an excellent candidate for the job.









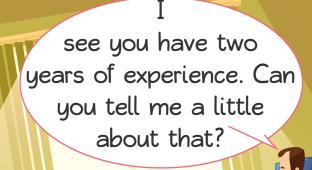
PAGE & OF 13



LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION)...

ENGLISH



Oh, yes. I worked in the mailroom at ABC Corporation last year.

I think this experience will help me blend into a job working here.

It was a temporary job, but I gained a lot of experience.

Excellent!
We are always
looking for someone
with experience.

Go on.

please.











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION)...

What are
your weaknesses,
Mark? Before you say
anything. Please bear in mind
that I heard all the ideal answers,
so if you're going to tell me that
your weaknesses are that you're
very patient or that you take up
too many tasks or you are a
perfectionist or any of that
bullsh, please just
save it. Ok?

Alright,

Mark. I like this

answer.

AMERICAN ENGLISH Wow, OK.
Off the top of my
head, I think my main
weakness is that I don't
tolerate sloppy work.
Sometimes I come across
as a tough person but
that's how you can
lead.

you have any questions for me?

Well, I've

already done my homework and learned everything I need to learn from the internet, but I would like to know when to expect a call from you.

Thank you, Sir.























LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION

EXPLANATION

"I like working with people. I'm a great people person."

A people person is somebody who is very good at interacting with people. They enjoy being around people. Some of us are like this, it comes naturally to some of us to know what to say and how to say it. But for some, interaction with people needs a little extra effort. To be a good team player and blend in, we all need to learn how to make others comfortable talking to us. If you make people comfortable coming to you. We call you approachable.

If you're approachable, you're welcoming, you're friendly and easy to talk to. It's a very good skill.

"I'm very responsible and I always aspire to meet the expectations that my managers have of me."

The word aspire is a little similar to the word hope or desire.

I aspire to do something. = I have a desire to do it or I hope to achieve it.

PAGE 7 OF 13











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION

EXPLANATION

"Haha you bet but, don't worry. I've seen worse."

You bat is slang and means "yes", "you're right", "Of course," and "totally".

Example

• Person A invites you to dinner. After dinner he asks you if you enjoyed the meal. You can say "You bet". It means. "Yes, I did".

"Sorry. I just like to be always prepared and hey, doesn't this itself show my devotion?"

The word devotion here means "loyalty towards something".

If you love something so much and you're very loyal to it. We say "you're devoted".

"Not to toot my own horn." This is a phrase used especially in America and Canada.

It means, to talk about yourself and say very good things. It's like the word "brag".

PAGE 8 OF 16











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

CONVERSATION

EXPLANATION

"Wow, ok. Off the top of my head, I think my main weakness is that I don't tolerate sloppy work."

"Off the top of my head" means. I will just say what comes to my mind without thinking first. I will not give any careful thoughts.

The word "tolerate" means, to allow.

The word "sloppy" means, careless or disorganized.

"... you are a perfectionist or any of that bullsh, please just save it."
Bullsh is a short way of saying "Bullshit".

PAGE 9 OF 16











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Good morning, Mr. Stevens. My name is Mark Jones.

> صباح الخير. سيد ستيفنز. اسمى مارك جونز.

Good morning. I'm Robert Stevens.

صباح الخير. أنا روبرت ستيفنز.



Please have a seat and let's get started.

تفضل بالجلوس ودعنا نبدأ.

Thank you, Mr. Stevens.

شكرا لك, سيد ستيفنز.

Please call me Robert, and I'll call you Mark. We are informal here.

رجاءً نادني بـ روبرت, و أنا سوف أناديك مارك. ننادي بعضنا هنا بشكل غير رسمى.

That's good to know, Robert. Thanks.

من الجيد معرفة هذا, شكراً لك روبرت.



PAGE 100 OF 163











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Yeah, it was pretty easy. Plus, I always use GPS.

نعم, كان سهلاً, بالإضافة إلى أنى دائما أستخدم الGps.

Sure, was it easy to find the office?

على الرحب, كان من السهل عليك الوصول للمكتب؟



Alright, why don't we start by you telling me a little about yourself?

> حسنًا، لماذا لا نبدأ بك, لتخبرني قلىلاً عن نفسك؟

Sure. My name is Mark. I graduated from Cairo University in 2016. I'm doing my master's degree in business administration. I like working with people. I'm a great people person. I'm very responsible and I always aspire to meet the expectations that my managers have of me.



 lack بالتأكيد. اسمى مارك. تخرجت من جامعة القاهرة عام 2016. أدرس الآن في مرحلة الماجستير وموضوع دراستي هو إدارة الأعمال. أحب العمل مع الناس. أنا شخص إجتماعي. أنا شخص مسؤول وأطمح دوماً أن أكون على مستوى توقعات مديريني.

PAGE M OF M











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Was it that obvious?

أكان الأمر بهذا الوضوح؟

I can tell that your practiced saying that.

أنا متأكد من إنك قد تدربت على قول هذا.

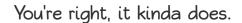


Haha you bet but, don't worry. I've seen worse.

هاهاها, بالتأكيد, لا تقلق لقد رأيت ما هو أسوأ.

Sorry. I just like to be always prepared and hey, doesn't this itself show my devotion?

آسف. أود فقط أن أكون مستعداً دائمًا، مهلاً، ألا يظهر هذا في حد ذاته إخلاصي؟



أنت على حق, بالفعل يشير إلى حد ما.



Not to toot my own horn, but I really think that I'm an excellent candidate for the job.

> ليس غروراً, بالنسبة لى أعتقد أنى المرشح المثالي لهذه الوظيفة.

PAGE 12 OF 13







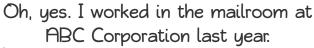




LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

I see you have two years of experience. Can you tell me a little about that?

> أرى أن لديك سنتين من الخبرة. أيمكنك أن تحدثني عن ذلك؟



نعم, عملت بغرفة البريد لدى مؤسسة ABC في العام الماضي.

Go on, please.

أستمر رجاءً.

It was a temporary job, but I gained a lot of experience.

كان عملاً مؤقتاً, ولكنى حصلت على ﴿ العديد من الخبرات.

> Excellent! We are always looking for someone with experience.

> > ممتاز! دائما ما نبحث عن ذوى الخبرة.

I think this experience will help me blend into a job working here.

> أعتقد أن هذه الخبرة ستساعدني على الإندماج في عملي هنا.







YouTube



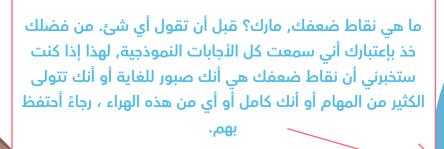


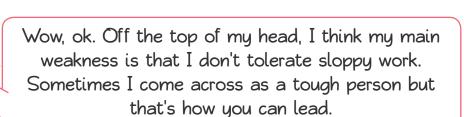




LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

What are your weaknesses, Mark? Before you say anything. Please bear in mind that I heard all the ideal answers, so if you're going to tell me that your weaknesses are that you're very patient or that you take up too many tasks or you are a perfectionist or any of that bullsh, please just save it. Ok?





حسنا, أول ما خطر ببالى دون تفكير, أعتقد أن نقاط ضعفى الأساسية هي أنى لا أتساهل مع التخاذل في العمل. أحيانا أكون شخص شديد ولكن هذا ما يتطلبه الأمر حتى تستطيع القيادة.

PAGE 13 OF 13



YouTube









LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

Alright, Mark. I like this answer.

حسناً يا مارك, أعجبتني هذه الإجابة.

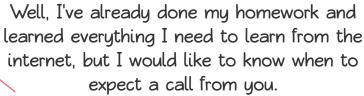
Thank you, Sir.

شكراً لك, سيدي.



Do you have any questions for me?

هل لديك أي أسئلة لي؟



حسنا, لقد قمت بالفعل بأداء واجبي وتعلمت كل شي: أحتاج أن أتعلمه من الإنترنت، ولكن أود أن أعرف متى أتوقع مكالمة منكم.



PAGE 16 OF 16











LEARN ENGLISH FOR FREE

You'll be contacted by an HR representative within two weeks.

سوف تتلقى اتصالاً من ممثل الموارد البشرية في خلال أسبوعين.



Great, thanks again for having me.

رائع, شكراً مجدداً على مقابلتي.

Thanks for coming. Have a good day.

شكراً لقدومك. اتمنى لك يوم جيد.

You too, Sir.

وأنت أيضاً, سيدي.





PAGE 13 OF 13











يتفكير بالانجليار

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



بشع Awful

Very bad. سيء جدأ

Matt hates the awful smell coming from his shoes.

مات يكره الرائحة البشعة الخارجة من حذائه.

Very strange. غريب جداً

Jack's hair looks really crazy, and he has an interview today!

شعر جالك يبدو غريباً جداً، وهو لديه مقابلة عمل اليوم

ضخم Huge

Very large. کبیر جداً

I'll give you a thousand dollars if you eat this huge burger.

سأعطيك ألف دولار إذا أكّلت هذا البرجر الضخم.

شاذ Odd

Very different in a strange way. مختلف جداً بطريقة غريبة

Lewis's choice of hair color is quite odd.

اختيار لويس للون الشعر غريب (شاذ) حداً.











صب Pour

To fill a container with liquid. أن تملأ وعاء بسائل

In here, we pour whisky.

هنا، نحن <mark>نصب</mark> الويسكي.

يندم Regret

To Feel sorry about something you did or did not do.

E.g.

أن تشعر بالأسف حيال شيء فعلته أو لم تفعله.

I don't **regret** the 18 years I was married to Nancy.

أنا لست نادماً على الـ 18 عام التي كنت فيها متزوج نانسي.

قوي Tough

قوى .Strong

Max is the **toughest** man in our city.

ماکس هو أقوى رجل فى مدينتنا.

فاصة Chance

An opportunity to do something. اتاحة الفرصة لفعل شيء ما

This is your last **chance**.

هذه هي فرصتك الأخيرة.









فكير بالانجليز

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





A large open space in a building. مساحة كبيرة مفتوحة في مبني

We're going to have the party in the grand hall.

سوف نقيم الحفل في القاعة الكبري.

مباشرةً - في الحال Immediately

فوراً Right away

The ambulance came immediately after the accident.

حائت الاسعاف مباشرةً بعد الحادثة.

ینوی Intend

To went to do or plan to do something. أن تريد أن تفعل أو تخطط أن تفعل شيء ما

He **intends** to eat only healthy food from now on.

هو ينوي أن يأكل فقط طعام صحى من الأن فصاعداً.

Mention يذكر - يشير إلى

To talk or write about something, often quickly.

E.g. أن تتحدث أو تكتب عن شيء ما، غالباً على عجالة.

You must be very brave to **mention** his name.

من المؤكد أنك شجاع جداً لتذكر/لتقول اسمه.











رد الفعل Reaction

The way someone acts or feels after something happens.

طريقة تصرف أو شعور شخص بعد حدوث شيء ما. E.g.

It was a mistake to tell him the news. His reaction was very bad. كان من الخطأ إخباره بالأخبار، كانت ردة فعله سيئة للغاية.

يسجل هدف Score

أن تكسب نقطة في لعبة . To win a point in a game

He **scored** the winning goal at last night's game.

هو سجل هدف الفوز في مباراة الأمس. -

على نحو اسوأ Worse

More terrible than other things. أكثر سوء من الأشياء الآخرى

There is nothing worse than cleaning the floor.

ليس هناك أسوأ من تنظيف الأرضية.









كيا بالانجاب

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Idioms

Between the devil and the deep blue see

ما بين الشيطان والبحر الأزرق العمىق

To be in a difficult situation where there are two bad options. أن تكون في موقف صعب بين إختيارين سيئين.

E.g.

I'm between the devil and the deep blue see. If I call her, she will yell at me and If I don't she will think I'm ignoring her.

أنا بين إختيارين كلاهما مر، إذا أتصلت بها، ستصرخ في وإذا لم أفعل ستظل اني أتجاهلها.

Settle the score with someone

تسوية النتيجة مع شخص ما

To take revenge on someone for something they have done in the past, أن تنتقُم من شخص ما من أجل شّيء فعَّله في الماضي.

E.g.

That was not cool, man. What did you do that to her?

لم يكن هذا جيداً يا رجل. لماذا فعلت هذا بها؟

To settle an old score.

لتصفية حساب قديم.











Exercise 1

Choose the correct word to complete the each sentence.

- 1. Ryan is a big and (tough main awful) basketball player. He is the best on our team.
- 2. The accident on the bust road was (sore awful - odd). Many people were hurt.
- 3. Maggie found several (tough odd brave) insects on the ground on her way home.
- 4. We cannot take the stairs to the top of the (huge - brave - awful) building.
- 5. The (carrot thief moment) used a long rope to get down from the house.

Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the correct words. One word will not be used.

moment - regrets - steal - thief - pour - crazy

- 1. Nancy saying mean things to her brother when he broke her favorite pot.
- 2. Would you me a tall glass of chocolate milk, please?
- 3. Why did you throw your cat in to the water? Are you?
- 4. Could you wait a? I have to shut the window before we go out.
- 5. You should not your friend's toys. It is wrong.

Exercise 3

Choose the word or phrase most similar in meaning to the underlined word.

- 1. Julie forgot to mention that her brother was in the movie.
 - a) mail
 - b) search
 - c) say
 - d) kill
- 2. The boy intended to run in the race, but he broke his leg.
 - a) shared
 - b) wanted
 - c) supported
 - d) pour
- 3. Oh, I didn't want extra cheese on my pizza. Can you take it off, please?
 - a) more
 - b) whole
 - c) odd
 - d) brave
- 4. Mike! You need to stop fighting with your brother immediately.
 - a) possibly
 - b) finally
 - c) now
 - d) after
- 5. Chris got the ball and scored the winning goal. Everyone cheered for him.
 - a) marched
 - b) raised
 - c) rolled
 - d) made

The Answers

Exercise 1

- 1. tough
- 2. awful
- 3. odd
- 4. huge
- 5. thief

Exercise 2

- 1. regrets
- 2. pour
- 3. crazy
- 4. moment
- 5. steal

Exercise 3

- 1. c) say
- 2. b) wanted
- 3. a) more
- 4. c) now
- 5. d) made











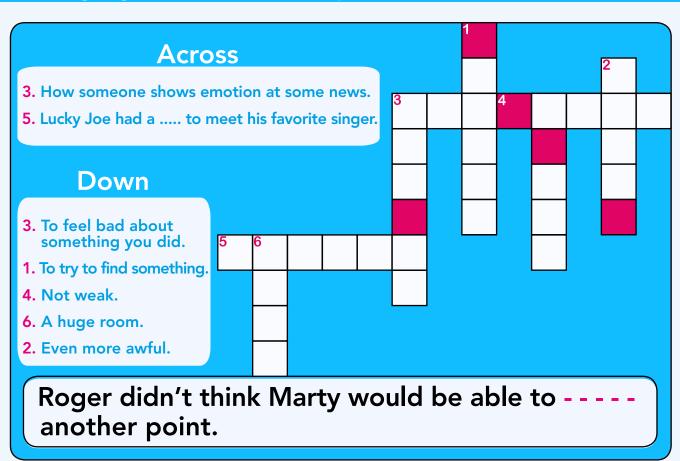
يتفكير بالانطابانية

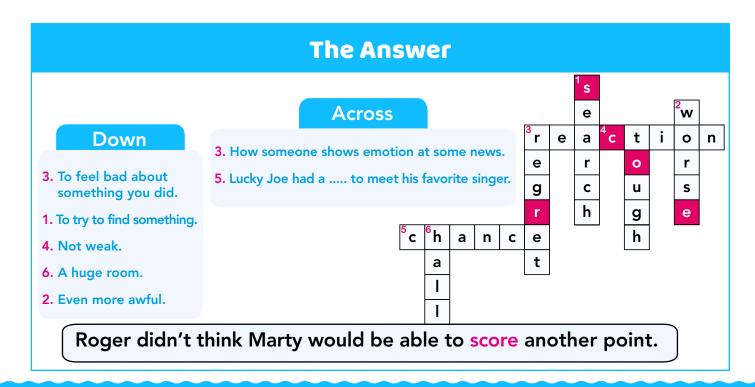
من قناة ذا امپركان انجلش



Exercise 4

Use the hints to complete the puzzle then make a word from the highlighted letters to complete the sentence.















A Very Bad Day

Today was awful. I intended to go to soccer practice. The coach mentioned that he wanted me to score more points and that I needed extra practice. I did not get the chance to practice. Someone stole my soccer shoes! I searched everywhere but could not find them. I felt even worse because they were new. I really regretted bringing them. When I saw that the shoes were missing. I went to my coach immediately. His reaction was calm. He did not think it was odd for someone to steal my shoes. He said it happened a lot, and he would find the thief and make him return my shoes. I watched my team practice. Our players are not huge, but we are all tough. I cannot wait to get my shoes back and play again.

Choose the correct Answer

- 1. What did the coach want the boy to do?
 - a) Buy new shoes.
 - b) Score more points.
 - c) Search everywhere.
 - d) Regret playing soccer.
- 2. The coach did not think it was for shoes to be stolen.
 - a) tough
 - b) awful
 - c) huge
 - d) odd

The Answer

- 1. b) Score more points.
- 2. d) odd

Fill in the blanks to complete the story

The boy had an day. The coach wanted him to more points, and he needed practice. Someone the boy's shoes. He bringing them to practice.











جزء - کسرة Bit

A small piece or amount.

E.g.

I broke the chocolate into bits so I could share it with my friends. كسرت الشيكولاته إلى اُجزاء لكي استطيع مشاركتها مع اصدقائي.

شائع Common

اعتیادی، یحدث او یری غالباً .Usual; happening or seen often

Colds are quite **common** in the winter.

نزلات البرد شائعة جداً في فصل الشتاء.

الحمية - الغذاء Diet

The food that someone usually eats. الطعام الذي أكلة شخص ما في العادة

I intend to have a healthier **diet** by eating more fruit.

أنوى اتباع نظام غذائي صحى من خلال تناول المزيد من الفاكهة.

دىيل Evidence

Something that shows something else is true.

E.g.

شیء یوضح أن شیء اخر صحیح.

The police found **evidence** that Jerry was the thief.

عثرت الشرطة على دليل على أن جيرى كان اللص.

لائق بدنياً Fit

قوى ويتمتع بالصحة .Strong and healthy

They stay fit by running whenever possible.

يظلون لائقين عن طريق الجرى كلما كان ذلك ممكناً.

أن تبقي شيء عند مستوى منخفض .To keep something at a low level

She has little money and must limit how much she spends.

لديها القليل من المال ويجب أن تحدد من المبلغ الذي تنفقه.

جسدي Physical

يتعلق بالجسم وليس العقل .Relating to the body not the mind

Playing sports is a good way to get **physical** exercise.

ممارسة الرياضة هي وسيلة جيدة للحصول على تَمارين جسّدية.











سم Poison

Something that can cause illness or death if eaten or drunk.

E.g. شيء يمكن أن يسبب المرض أو الموت إذا تم أكله او شربه.

The symbol on the bottle says that it is **poison**.

الرمز على الزجاجة يقول أنه سم.

البيع Sale

بيع شيء مقابل المال .Selling something for money

There is a ice house for sale in my neighborhood.

هناك منزل جميل <mark>للبيع</mark> في الجي الذي اسكن فيه[.].

نوع - صنف lype

A category of people or things having similarities.

E.g. فئة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء التي لها أوجه تشابه.

Bakeries usually sell several different types of bread.

عادةً ما تبيع المخابز عدة أنواع مختلفة من الخبز.

كمية Amount

کم یوجد من شیء ما .How much there is of something

Make sure to use the right amount of oil to fry the food.

تأكد من إستخدام الكمية المناسبة من الزيت لقلى الطعام.

علام - شفاء Cure

شيء يجعل المرضى أفضل .Something that makes sick people better

The new cure made John feel better almost immediately.

العلاج الجديد جعل جون يشعر بتحسن على الفور تقريباً.

مرض - داء Disease

مشكلة طبية يعبر عنها الطبيب .A medical problem expressed by a doctor

A disease made the tree's leaves turn brown.

مرض جعل أوراق الشجرة تتحول إلى اللون البني.

What is the difference between sickness, illness and disease

Sickness - illness Disease

Both are used by the society to describe the state of health.

كلاهما يستخدمون من قبل المجتمع لوصف الحالة

Is the doctor diagnosis of the state. هي تشخيص الطبيب لهذه الحالة.











طبی Medical

متعلق بعلم الطب .Relating to the science of medicine

If you often have awful headaches, you should get medical help. إذا كنت تعانى من صداع فظيع في كثير من الأحيان، يفضل أن تحصل على مساعدة طبية.

Necessary ضروري,

Meeded. ضروری - محتاج إليه

When getting ready for a trip, take only what is necessary.

عند الاستعداد لرحلة، خذ فقط ما هو ضروري.

يقلل - يخفض Reduce

To make something smaller in size, number, or amount.

E.g.

أن تجعل شيء أصغر في الحجم أو العدد أو الكمية.

The store **reduced** its prices on everything.

المتجر خفض اسعاره على كل شيء.

جدي - خطير Serious

Having important or dangerous possible results.

E.g.

يتضمن نتائج محتملة مهمة أو خطيرة.

We saw a **serious** car accident this afternoon.

شاهدنا حادث سيارة خطير بعد ظهر هذا اليوم.

مصدر Source

A person or a thing that gives what is wanted.

E.g.

شخص أو شيء يعطي ما هو مطلوب

The river is the main **source** of water for many animals.

النهر هو المصدر الرئيسي للمياه للعديد من الحيوانات.

يزود - يمون Supply

To give someone something so they can use it.

أن تعطى شخص ما شيئاً بغرض ان يستخدمه.

My father **supplies** carrots to restaurants in our town.

والدى يزود مطاعم مدينتنا بالجزر.











Exercise 1

Choose the correct word to complete the each sentence.

- 1. I like a (bit moment sale) of sugar in my tea.
- 2. People use (ground evidence poison) to kill insects.
- 3. Do your parents (pour limit diet) how much candy you eat?
- 4. People usually have more (physical fit extra) problems as they get older.
- 5. Liam wants to get a (off fit common) so he can play on the soccer team.

Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the correct words. One word will not be used.

type - sale - common - limit - diet - evidence

- 1. Carrie made \$80 from the of her bike.
- 2. Brown is the most eye color in the world.
- 3. There is a lot of that the Earth is getting warmer.
- 4. Megan forgot to mention what of ice cream to buy.
- 5. The of an elephant does not include meat.

Exercise 3

Choose the word or phrase most similar in meaning to the underlined word.

- 1. Plants supply a lot of our food.
 - a) Pour in.
 - b) Give us.
 - c) Regret.
 - d) Mix in.
- 2. We are trying to reduce the amount of TV we watch.
 - a) Limit.
 - b) Mention.
 - c) Search.
 - d) Inform.
- 3. Using too much energy causes serious problems for the environment.
 - a) Worse.
 - b) Tight.
 - c) Health.
 - d) Dangerous.
- 4. Germany produces a lot of popular cars.
 - a) Creates.
 - b) Intends.
 - c) Scores.
 - d) Raises.
- **5.** Ellen was the best source of ideas in our group.
 - a) History.
 - b) Product.
 - c) Moment.
 - d) Giver.

The Answers

Exercise 1

- 1. bit
- 2. poison
- 3. limit
- 4. physical
- 5. fit

Exercise 2

- 1. sale
- 2. common
- 3. evidence
- 4. type
- 5. diet

Exercise 3

- 1. b) Give us
- 2. a) Limit
- 3. d) Dangerous
- 4. a) Creates
- 5. d) Giver











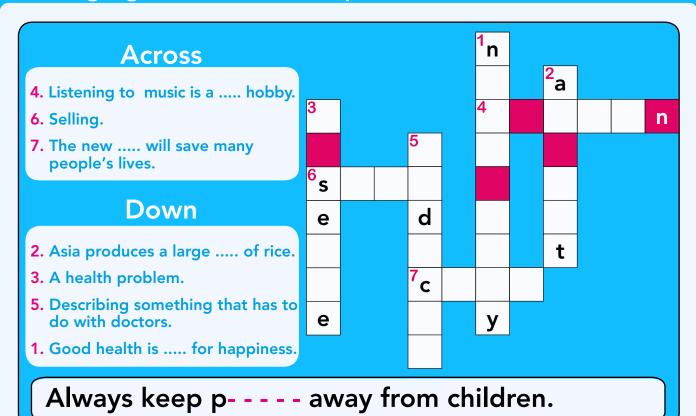
يتفكي بالانجابارية

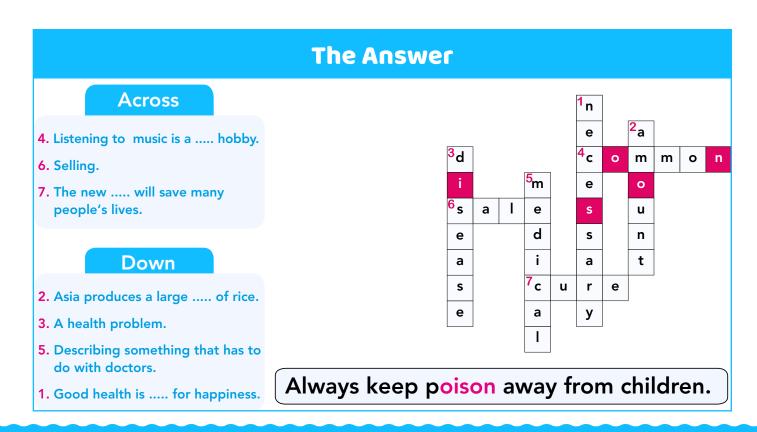
من قناة ذا امپركان انجلش



Exercise 4

Use the hints to complete the puzzle then make a word from the highlighted letters to complete the sentence.















This Year's Vacation

Junk food includes candy, potato chips, and cookies, eating this type of food too much is like eating poison. Today, it is common for kids to weigh too much and be less fit than children in the past, that is because their diets are worse than they used to be. This is a serious problem. Evidence shows that bad diets can cause diseases that have no cure now. What can we do? We can reduce the amount of soda we drink: soda is mostly sugar. It does not supply our bodies with anything necessary. We should also limit snacks like potato chips. You can eat a bit of junk food sometimes. Just do not eat it every day! Schools can help, too. Some US schools have stopped the sale of soda at lunch.

Choose the correct Answer

- 1. This reading is mainly about
 - a) Losing weight.
 - b) Signs of physical health.
 - c) Kid's bad diets.
 - d) Caused of disease.
- 2. A problem mentioned in the reading is children.
 - a) Fit.
 - b) Sick.
 - c) Unhappy.
 - d) Heavy.
- 3. Some US schools do not anymore.
 - a) Sell soda.
 - b) Produce soda.
 - c) Supply free lunches.
 - d) Sell lunches.

The Answer

- 1. c) Kid's bad diets.
- 2. d) Heavy.
- 2. a) Sell soda.







تفكير بالانجليزية

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Carved in stone

منقوش على الحجر

E.g.

We decided to get married in July but it's not yet carved in stone. قررنا ان نتزوج في يوليو ولكن الأمر ليس منقوشاً على الحجر بعد.

ىنحت (انشاء حدید) Carve = Sculpt ننحت

النحت Carving = Sculpture النحت

يقطع - ينقش Carve

E.g.

Who will carve the chicken?

من سيقطع الفرخة؟











قلعة Castle

A large home where a king or queen usually lives.

E.g.

منزل كبير حيث يعيش عادةً الملك أُو الملكة.

It was common to find huge **castles** in the past.

كان من الشائع أن تجد القلاع الضخمة في الماضي.

قرار Decision

A Choice to do something. اختيار أن تفعل شيء

Tim made a **decision** to eat carrots to be healthier.

اتخذ تيم قرار لتناول الجزر ليكون أكثر صحة.

إمبراطورية Empire

A kingdom. مملكة

The Roman empire included several hundred towns and cities.

شملت الإمبراطورية الرومانية عدة مئات من المدن والبلاد.

يكتشف - يستلطع Explore

To look at something in a careful way to learn about it.

E.g.

أن تنظر إلى شيء ما بتدقيق لتعرف المزيد عنه.

He was alone ,so he decided to **explore** the path.

كان بمفرده فقرر استكشاف الممر.

رحلة جوية Flight

رحلة على متن طائرة .A trip on an airplane

My family took a flight to Germany last summer.

قامت عائلتي برحلة إلى ألمانيا الصيف الماضي.

يحرس Guard

To watch in order to protect. يراقب من أجل الحماية

Our dog is guarding the house at the moment.

كلبنا يحرس المنزل في الوقت الحالي.

مذهل - لا يصدق Incredible

جيد ويكاد يكون مستحيل ان يصدق. Good and almost impossible to believe.

My book mentions how incredible the beaches are in Hawaii.

يذكر كتابي كيف أن الشواطئ في هاواي مذهلة.











المستوى الثاني

يقدم الطعام Serve

To give someone food in a restaurant or at home.

E.g.

أن تعطى طعام لشخص في مطعم أو في المنزل.

They **serve** many types of food at this restaurant.

أنهم يقدمون أنواع عديدة من الطعام في هذا المطعم.

بشرة - جلد Skin

The outer part that cover humans and animals.

E.g.

الجزء الخارجي الذي يغطى البشر والحيوانات.

For beautiful **skin**, a healthy diet and good habits are necessary. من أجل بشرة جميلة، من الضروري اتباع نظام غذائي صحى وعادات جيدة.

معجب بـ / يعجب بـ Admire

To like and think good things about others.

E.g.

ان تحب وتفكر في الأشياء الجيدة عن الآخرين.

I admire my father more than anyone else.

أنا معجب بأبي أكثر من أي شخص آخر.

قديم - عتيق Ancient

قديم جداً .Very old

This city in Peru is evidence of an **ancient** culture.

هذه المدينة في بيرو هي دليل على وجود حضارة قديمة.

جذاب - فاتن Attractive

Very pleasing in appearance or sound. ممتع جداً في المظهر أو الصوت

Jessy is looking for an attractive dress for her party.

تبحث جيسي عن فستان جذاب من أجل حفلتها.

عملاق - ضخم Gaint

They had the chance to ride on the giant elephant.

كانت لديهمم فرصه للركوب على الفيل العملاق.

يعبئ - يحزم أغراض Pack

To put items into a bag or suitcase to take somewhere.

أن تضع أشياء في كيس أو حقيبة لأخذها إلى مكان ما.

She needs to limit the items, she is **packing** in her suitcase.

هي تحتاج إلى الحد من الأشياء التي تقوم بتعبئتها في حقيبتها.











يفضل Prefer

To like something more than something else.

E.g.

أن تحب شيئاً أكثر من شيءآخر.

Gabriella **prefers** to eat fresh fruit instead of junk food. تفضل غابرييلا تناول الفاكهة الطازجة بدلا من تناول الوجبات السريعة.

تأجير - إيجار Rent

To pay money to use a thing that belongs to someone else.

E.g.

أن تدفع المال لإستخدام شيء يخص شخص آخر.

They **rented** a nice house for a small amount of money. استأجروا منزلا جميلا مقابل مبلغ صغير من المال.

يحترم - يجل Respect

To think someone is special and important.

E.g.

أن تظن أن شخص ما استئنائي ومهم.

It's necessary for teachers to love students if they want to earn their **respect**. من الضروري أن يجب المعلمون الطلاب إذا كانوا يرغبون في كسب إحترامهم.

Wave يلوح بيده

To move your hand to say hello or goodbye.

E.g.

أن تحرك بدك لتقول مرحباً أو وداعاً.

He waved goodbye to his parents before going aback to college. هو لوح وداعا لوالديه قبل العودة إلى الكلية.











Exercise 1

Choose the correct word to complate the each sentence.

- 1. Our (flight decision source) to New York was cancelled an hour ago.
- 2. It is (common incredible southern) how fit you have become in a short amount of time.
- 3. Choosing which college to attend is a serious (decision - thief - flight).
- 4. They intended to see some old (empire castles - reactions) while on vacation.
- 5. The small town is in the (southern extra incredible) part of the country.

Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the correct words. One word will not be used.

exploring - flight - guarded - skin - empire - served

- 1. The famous actress is quite proud of her beautiful
- 2. The men who the castle were strong and tough.
- 3. The great had many big cities and towns.
- 4. Would you want to do a little of the city this afternoon.
- 5. The gentlemen who us in the restaurant was very helpful and polite.

Exercise 3

Choose the word or phrase most similar in meaning to the underlined word.

- 1. Sally's friends went to view her new baby at the hospital.
 - a) Prefer.
 - b) See.
 - c) Wave.
 - d) Search.
- 2. Sophie and Sal preferred to visit Italy instead of France.
 - a) Liked better.
 - b) Reduced.
 - c) Had a chance.
 - d) Intended.
- 3. Ella has several attractive pictures hanging in her room.
 - a) Giant.
 - b) Pretty.
 - c) Medical.
 - d) Awful.
- 4. Oh, no! I just made a giant mistake. I am very sorry!
 - a) Main.
 - b) Proud.
 - c) Physical.
 - d) Huge.
- 5. Do you see Tim waving over there? He is very friendly
 - a) Saying hello.
 - b) Serving food.
 - c) Mentioning.
 - d) Stealing.

The Answers

Exercise 1

- 1. flight
- 2. Incredible
- 3. decision
- 4. castles
- 5. southern

Exercise 2

- 1. skin
- 2. guarded
- 3. empire
- 4. exploring
- 5. served

Exercise 3

- 1. b) See
- 2. a) Liked better
- 3. b) Pretty
- 4. a) Huge
- 5. a) Saying hello











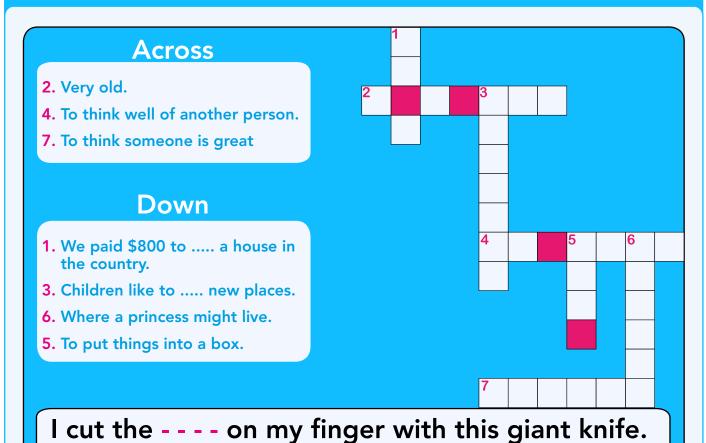
لتمكير بالانطابارية

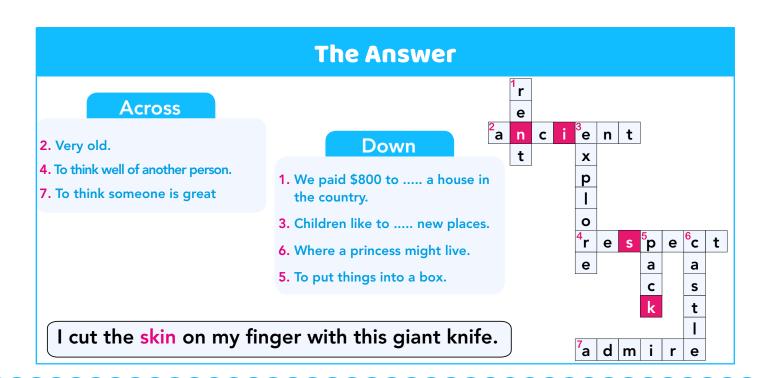
من قناة ذا امپركان انجلش



Exercise 4

Use the hints to complete the puzzle then make a word from the highlighted letters to complete the sentence.















This Year's Vacation

Dear Mom,

I have made a decision about this year's vacation. I am going to spend it in an ancient castle. The castle is in the southern part of England this area, which was once part of an empire, has many places to visit. I have rented a room in the castle for a week. Outside, there is an attractive, giant garden to explore. I will be able to view all of the incredible flowers and plants there. I prefer visiting gardens to going to the beach. My flight will leave in the evening from here. It will arrive the following afternoon. I will start packing a bit closer to the date I am leaving. I will write to you from the castle.

All my love, Alex

Choose the correct Answer

- 1. What type of castle will Alex stay in during her vacation?
 - a) A giant one.
 - b) An odd one.
 - c) An awful one.
 - d) An ancient one.
- 2. Alex gardens to beaches.
 - a) Views.
 - b) Rents.
 - c) Prefers.
 - d) Explores.

The Answer

- 1. d) An ancient one.
- 2. c) Prefers.









فكب بالانجابية

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Pass the hat

جمع تبرعات

US Pass the hat

UK Pass the hat around

E.g.

We're all passing the hat to help Michael.

We're helping kids in Africa so, please pass the hat around if you can.

Pass the buck

لإلقاء اللوم على شخص آخر

E.g.

Don't try to pass the buck, it's your fault, and everybody knows it.

Goalkeepers always pass the buck to defenders.











مرتکز علی - مبني علی Based on

To be the foundation for something. أن تكون الأساس لشيء ما

E.g.

This incredible show was based on a story by a famous writer.

هذا العرض (المسلسل) المذهل مبنى على قصة كتبها كاتب مشهور

So, the foundation on which this show is based, is that story by a famous writer, and since the story is the foundation, we can say the show is **based on** the story.

إذا، الأساس الذي ارتكز عليه هذا العرض هو تلك القصة التي كتبها كاتب مشهور، وبما أن القصة هي الأساس يمكننا أن نقول ان العرض مبنى على القصة

شخصية Character

A person in a book or a movie. شخص في كتاب أو فيلم

E.g.

The main **character** in my favorite TV show is a very small girl.

الشخصية الرئيسية في مسلسلي المفضل طفلة صغيرة جدا

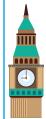
You probably know that the Arabic word 'مسلسل 'in English is 'series' and you're right. يحتمل أنك تعرف أن الكلمة العربية 'مسلسل' بالإنجليزية هي 'series' وانت محق

The difference between a TV show and series

اى برنامج يعرض على التلفاز TV show

حلقة Episode

موسم Season



E.g.

مسلسل TV series

حلقة Episode

موسم Series

- Jack with a snack is a TV show.
- Jack with a snack is my favorite TV show.
- Did you watch last night's episode of Jack with a snack?
- I can't wait for season 3 of Jack with a snack.
- Jack with a snack is a TV series.
- Jack with a snack is my favorite TV series.
- Did you watch last night's episode of Jack with a snack?
- I can't wait for series 3 of Jack with a snack.

عدو Enemy

شخص یکرهك Someone who hates you

Helen and I used to be friends, but she is my enemy now.

اعتدت انا وهيلين أن نكون أصدقاء، لكنها الأن عدوتي

Notice that we say, Helen and I, this is the formal way, the more accurate way. If you're talking casually, you can say, Helen and me.

> لاحظ أننا نقول Helen and I هذه هي الطرِيقة الرسمية، الطريقة الأكثر دقة إذا كنت تتكلم بطريقة غير رسمية، يمكنك أن تقول Helen and me

طول Length

How long something is from one end to another

الطول (الافقى) الذي يبلغه شيء ما، من بدايته إلى نهايته

She wants to know the **length** of the piece of wood.

هي تريد أن تعرف <mark>طول</mark> قطعة الخشب











يتعهد - يعد Promise

To tell someone that you will do something for sure.

E.g.

الطول (الافقى) الذي يبلغه شيء ما، من بدايته إلى نهايته

Remember that you **promised** you won't tell anyone our secret.

تذكر أنك وعدت أن لن تخبر اي أحد بسرنا

Quality

مدى جودة أو سوء شيء ما .How good or bad something is

Sam makes attractive clothes of good quality.

سام يصنع ملابس جذابة بجودة جيدة

كثيراً ما.... / في معظم الاحيان Regularly

غالباً - في معظم الحيان .Often.

He regularly helps his dad with so many things.

هو كثيراً ما يساعد والده في الكثير من الأشياءُ

ينجو - يبقي على قيد الحياه Survive

To stay alive. أن يظل حياً

Lost in the forest, Bob survived by living like ancient humans.

تائهاً في الغابة، نجا (بوب) عن طريق العيش مثَّل البشر القدامي

عنوان (کتاب أو فيلم مثلاً) Title

A name of something like a book or a movie. اسم شيء ما كالكتاب أو الفيلم

The title of my favorite book is "Legacy of Ashes".

عنوان كتاب المفضل هو "ميراث من الرماد"

بالغ - كبير (ليس طفل) Adult

شخص مكتمل النمو .Someone who is fully grown

The adult I respect the most is my father.

أكثر شخص كبير احترمه هو والدي

كلاسىكى Classic

Of good quality and popular for a long time.

شيء ذو جودة طيبه وشائع (محبوب) لمدة طويل

I enjoy driving my **classic** car. It looks strange on the road, but I love it. أنا استمتع بقيادة سيارتي الكلاسيكية، تبدو غريبه على الطريق ولكني أحبها











یهجر Desert

To leave a place so it is empty. ان تترك مكان ما ليصير فارغاً

E.g.

They **deserted** the building after the terrible fire.

هجروا المبنى بعد الحريق الرهبب

By the way, the word 'desert' can be either a noun or a verb, we just studied it as a verb. When it is used as a verb, we stress the last syllable and say 'desert...'. However, when used as a noun, we stress the first syllable and say 'desert...'.

> بالمناسبة، كلمة 'desert' يمكن أن تكون أما اسم او فعل، درسناها للتو على أنها فعل حيت تستخدمها على أنها فعل، فاننا نشدد على المقطع الأخير في الكلمة ونقول... ولكن حين نستخدمها على أنها اسم، فاننا نشدد على المقطع الأولُّ فنقول...

أشى Female

Being a girl or a woman. أن تكون فتاه او امرأة

Many women prefer to visit a **female** doctor.

تفضل العديد من النساء زيارة طبيية

يتدفق - يجري Flow

أن يتحرك كالمياه .To move like water

This river **flows** from east to west.

يجري هذا النهر من جهة الشرق إلى جهة الغرب

لغز - غموض Mystery

شيء غريب وغير مفهوم .Something strange and not understood

The book tries to explain some of the mysteries of life.

يحاول الكتاب شرح بعض ألغاز الحياة

متعة Pleasure

شعور بالسعادة . A feeling of happiness

He finds **pleasure** in lying in the field and looking at the sky.

هو يجد المتعة في الإستلقاء في الحقل والنظر إلى السماء

ينشر (كتاب أو مجلة) Publish

To make books or magazines for sale. ان تصنع كتب أو مجلات للبيع

She as only 19 when her first book was published.

كانت في التاسعة عشر من عمرها فقط حين تم نشر كتابها الأول











المستوى الثاني

Exercise 1

Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

- 1. Marvin (promised admired based) his book on an event from ancient history.
- 2. The puppy (based preferred survived) without water for three days.
- 3. If I had known the poor (quality character decision) of this phone, I would not have bought it.
- 4. The (enemy clever southern) thief had stolen many paintings before anyone found out.
- 5. What is the (physical length character) of these pants.

Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the correct words. One word will not be used.

enemy - base - promised - title - characters - regularly

- 1. She flies to southern Australia for meeting.
- 2. You can easily find any book by searching the internet.
- 3. Polly and Cliff are my favorite TV Their show is the best.
- 4. Susan was my until we became friends in 6th grade.
- 5. Gretchen has to explore the castle and park with me.

Exercise 3

Choose the word or phrase most similar in meaning to the underlined word.

- 1. How did I lose my shoes? It is a real mystery.
 - a) Unknown thing.
 - b) Crazy thing.
 - c) Awful thing.
 - d) Serious thing.
- 2. The students deserted the playground when the bell rang.
 - a) Survived.
 - b) Left.
 - c) Rented.
 - d) Guarded.
- 3. What is your opinion about the new music teacher?
 - a) Flight.
 - b) Evidence.
 - c) Decision.
 - d) Thought.
- 4. Martha and Joel discovered the source of the river.
 - a) Flowed.
 - b) Viewed.
 - c) Found.
 - d) Promised.
- 5. Staying physically fit gives me great pleasure.
 - a) Enjoyment.
 - b) Character.
 - c) Community.
 - d) Price.

The Answers

Exercise 1

- 1. based
- 2. survived
- 3. quality
- 4. clever
- 5. length

Exercise 2

- 1. regularly
- 2. title
- 3. characters
- 4. enemy
- 5. promised

Exercise 3

- ^{1.} a) Unknown thing
- 3. d) Thought
- 4. c) Found
- 5. a) Enjoyment











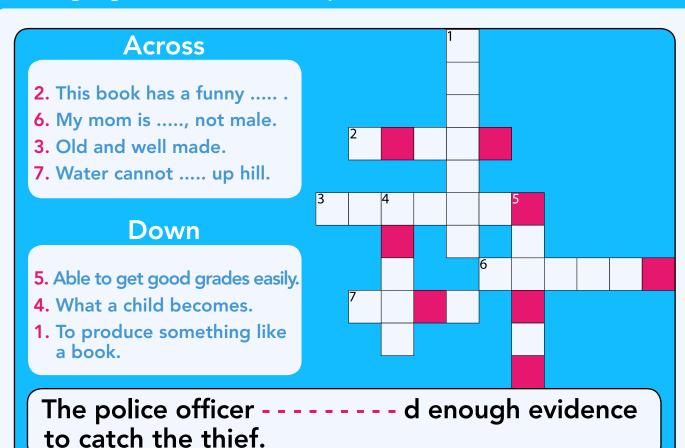
التفكير بالانجابارية

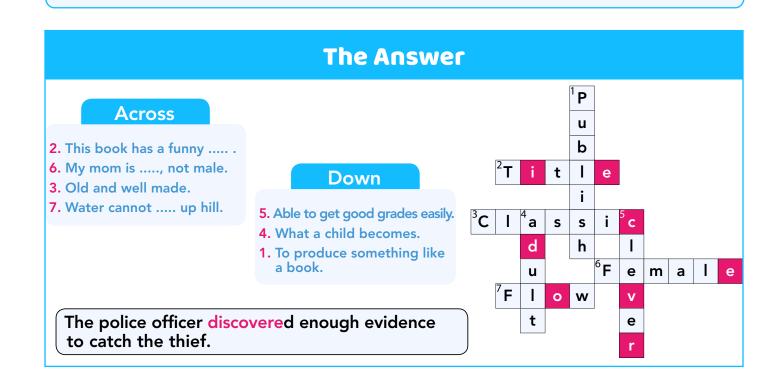
من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Exercise 4

Use the hints to complete the puzzle then make a word from the highlighted letters to complete the sentence.















My Favorite Book

The title of this book is 'A Castle's Mystery' It is based on something that happened a long time ago. The main character is a female medical student. She promises to discover a cure for a terrible disease that is spreading across southern Russia. The source of the cure is in a castle deserted by an ancient prince. While she is working on the cure, a thief who is her enemy tries to steal her work. The clever woman fights to survive when the thief tries to kill her. She finally gets her work back, which allows her to save many lives. I think both kids and adults will like this book. In my opinion, the only problem with this book is its length, it is very long, but it is still a great book. The quality of the writing is excellent.

Answer a few questions.

- 1. The woman discovers
 - a) A long book.
 - b) An incredible cure.
 - c) A deserted castle.
 - d) A thief with a disease.
- 2. In what part of Russia is the castle in the book?
 - a) The small part.
 - b) The deserted part.
 - c) The southern part.
 - d) In town.
- 3. What does the thief do to the woman?
 - a) He tries to help her.
 - b) He tries to give her a cure.
 - c) He tries to steal her work.
 - d) He tries to discover her.

The Answer

b) An incredible cure.

c) The southern part.

c) He tries to steal her work.









بتفكير بالانجابارية

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



Bite someone's head off

ينتقد شخص ما بشدة

E.g.

I bought you all these expensive dresses and you're biting my head off for forgetting to buy a belt?

I worked 10 hours straight without a break yesterday, but my boss bit my head off for sending him the report after 7pm.









فكير بالانجليا

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





To force air out through your throat, often when sick.

E.g.

أن تجبر الهواء على الخروج من حلقك، غالباً أثناء مرضك.

Steven usually coughs a lot when he is sick.

عادة ما يسعل ستيفن كثيراً عندما يكون مريضاً.

حشد - حممور Crowd

مجموعة كبيرة من الناس .A large group of people

The **crowd** found pleasure in watching a really great game.

وجد الجمهور متعة في مشاّهدة مباّراةٌ رائعة حقاً.

فضولی Curious

Wanting to know about something. ترغب أن تعرف عن شيء ما

The kids were **curious** to see what was inside the box.

الأطفال كانوا فضولين ليروا ما كان داخل الصندوق.

يختفي Disappear

Not to be seen or found. أن لا يمكن رؤيته أو العثور عليه

Tina's picture will **disappear** when it starts to rain.

ستختفي الصورة التي رسمتها تينا حين تبدأ فى المطر.











الحافة Edge

The part of something where it ends or starts.

E.g.

جزء من الشيء الذي يبدأ او ينتهي به.

Marshall stood at the edge of the cliff and watched the sunset. وقفت مارشال على حافة الجرف وشاهدت غروب الشمس.

المرشد - الدليل Guide

Someone who direct others on a trip. الشخص الذي يوجه الآخرين في رحلة

E.g. Our guide in Paris showed us many incredible places.

مرشدنا في باريس أرنا العديد من الأماكن الرائعة.

محلی Local

من المكان الذي تعيش فيه .From the place where you live

We prefer to buy our food from the local market.

نفضل شراء طعامنا من السوق المحلى.

آلة - ماكننة Machine

Something that does work using moving parts.

E.g.

شيء يعمل باستخدام الأجزاء المتحركة.

He put a small amount of clothes into the washing machine.

وضع كمية صغيرة من الملابس في الغسالة.









فكير بالانجلين

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





The cloud of gas that is made by fire. سحابة من الغاز التي تصنعها النار

Thick black **smoke** rose from the burning land.

ارتفع الدخان الأسود الكثيف من الأرض المحترقة.

الجادة (تطلق على الطريق الرئيسي الواسع الذي يتفرع منه عده شوارع جانبية) Avenue

شارع واسع A wide street

We will go down this avenue for a few blocks.

سنسير في هذه الجادة (الطريق) لبضعه مربعات سكنية.

يتوقع Expect

To think something is likely to happen.

E.g.

أن تظن أن شيئاً ما سيحدث على الأرجج.

It is cloudy, so Time **expects** it to rain.

الحو غائم، لذلك تيم يتوقع أن تمطر.

يشرح - يوضح Explain

أن تجعل شيء ما سهل الفهم . To make something easy to understand

He explained his opinion about the plan to his boss.

أوضح رأيه حول الخطة لرئيسه.













To press with fingers and move them from side to side

E.g.

أن تضغط بالاصابع وتحركهم من جانب إلى جانب.

Kate **rubbed** so much spices on the meat.

قامت كنت بدعك الكثير من النهارات على اللحم.

يلمع - يسطع Shine

ينتج ضوء ساطع . To produce bright light

The sun **shines** through the trees every morning.

تسطع الشمس من خلال الأشجار كلُّ صباح. (نورُها يمر من خلال الأشجارُ)

القوة Strength

طاقة حسدية كبيرة .Great physical power

Rocco trains hard to build his strength and stay healthy.

روكو يتدرب بجد لبناء قوته والحفاظ على صحته.

يقترح Suggest

To say that something is good or a good idea.

E.g.

أن تقول أن هناك شيئاً حيداً أو فكر حيدة.

She asked him to **suggest** a medicine for her cough.

طلب منه أن يقترح دواء لسعالهاً.











جولة tour

رحلة لرؤية عدة أماكن . A journey to see several places

We went on a **tour** to England saw many famous places.

ذهبنا في <mark>جولة</mark> إلى إنجلترا وشاهدنا العديد من الأماكن الشهيرة

Wheel عجلة

Something round which moves by turning.

E.g.

شيء مستدير يتحرك عن طريق الدوران.

The wheels on our car needed a bit more air.

احتاجت العجلات في سيارتنا إلى مزيد من الهواء.











Exercise 1

Choose the correct word to complete the each sentence.

- 1. The smoke caused me to (explore cough disappear) badly.
- 2. Mrs. Mackey was (curious local classic) about what we did on vacation.
- 3. We could not see Ronald because he (disappeared promised coughed) in the crowd.
- 4. Sabrina regularly worked as a (character guide machine) for the hotel.
- 5. It was clever of you to build this helpful (machine castle crowd).

Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the correct words. One word will not be used.

native - smoke - curious - edge - crowd - local

- 1. Hans burned his food, causing a lot of in the kitchen.
- 2. I cannot imagine how big the will be at the baseball game.
- 3. I am (a/an) of Canada, but I have not lived there for a long time.
- 4. I viewed the street below from the of the roof of the tall building.
- 5. We have discovered a restaurant which serves food grown by farmers.











-KULISI	Exerc	ise 5			
Choose the word	l or phrase most simil	ar in meani	ng to the	underlined word.	
1. Ben tried to explain th	e math problem to his frie	end.			
a) Publish	b) Flow through	c) Mak	e clear	d) Guide	
2. Bree rubbed her head	after she fell and hit it on	the ground.			
a) Moved her finger over	b) Viewed closely	c) Shook		d) Hurt	
3. The tour included a vis	it to a small village near t	ne mountains	in Peru.		
a) Enemy	b) Trip	c) Na	ition	d) Tradition	
4. Excuse me. Can you su	ıggest a good restaurant	for fish near	by?		
a) Share	b) Make a decision about	c) Develop d) Give an id		d) Give an idea about	
5. Which avenue does yo	ur grandmother live on? I	want to find	it on the m	nap.	
a) Road	b) Hall	c) [iet	d) Adult	

The Answers

Exercise 1

- 1. cough
- 2. curious
- 3. disappeared
- 4. guide
- 5. machine

Exercise 2

- 1. smoke
- 2. crowd
- 3. native
- 4. edge
- 5. local

Exercise 3

- 1. c) Make clear
- 2. a) Moved her finger over
- 3. b) Trip
- 4. d) give an idea about
- 5. a) Road











Exercise 4

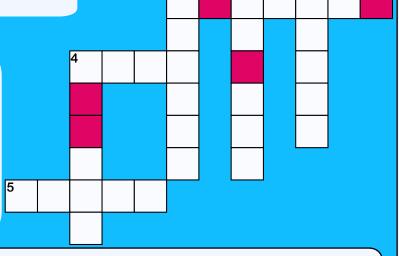
Use the hints to complete the puzzle then make a word from the highlighted letters to complete the sentence.

Across

- 4. The end of something like a table or cliff.
- 2. California is in the part of the US.
- 5. I always eat fruit.

Down

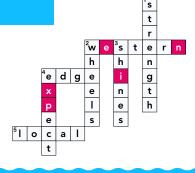
- 4. To wait for something you know you will get.
- 2. What cars and buses have so they can drive on the road.
- 3. What the sun does every day.
- 1. Toughness.



Jennifer could not ---a -- why she was late for class.

The Answer

Jennifer could not explain why she was late for class.













A Bus Tour

We met in a big crowd by the buses outside the hotel. Everyone was curious about the tour and expected it to be a lot of fun. Dmitry, a native of Russia, was our guide. He suggested that we take a lot of pictures. He also explained that there would be many places to shop. "Oh, no!" the bus driver said. We had stopped on an avenue in a small western town. One of the bus's wheels needed to be fixed. "We will look around for a while," Dmitry said. Some of the local stores were open, and we were able to shop for things. The sun was shining so it was nice to walk around. When the bus was ready, we got back on and continued the tour.

Choose the correct Answer

- 1. What was expected of the tour?
 - a) It would be curious.
 - b) It would be ready.
 - c) It would be local.
 - d) It would be fun.
- 2. The tour guide was (a/an) of Russia.
 - a) machine
 - b) edge
 - c) native
 - d) avenue

The Answer

- 1. d) It would be fun.
- 2. c) native

Fill in the blanks to complete the summary of the reading.

The group met near the buses. They were going on (a/an) Their was a native of Russia. The bus stopped in a small town. The group shopped at some stores. Then the tour continued.

The Answer

- 1. tour.
- 2. guide
- 3. western
- 4. local











Idioms part

Much ado about nothing الكثير من اللغط عن لا شيء

My friends make a big deal about which table we get in a restaurant. That's much ado about nothing as long as the food will be the same.









فكير بالانجليزر

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش





Something used to make clothes.

شيء يستخدم لصنع الملابس

This store has a lot of good-quality cloth for sale.

يحتوي هذا المتجر على الكثير من القماش عالى الجودة للبيع.

cloth (غير معدودة) إذا كنا نقصد الخامة نفسها مثل المثال السابق. cloth (معدودة) إذا كُنا نقصد تلك القطعة الصّغيرة التي ننظف بها أسطح الأشياء.







مساو Equal

Of the same size or number.

من نفس الحجم أو الرقم

E.g. | We cut the cake into equal pieces.

قطعنا الكعكة إلى قطع متساوية.











زائف - خاطئ False

Not true. غیر حقیقی

He thought the story was based on facts, but it was false.

ظن أن القصة كانت مبنية على حقائق ولكنها كانت زائفة.

بضائع Goods

E.g. Things which are made and sold.

The store sells a lot of great local goods.

الأشياء التي تم تصنيعها وبيعها

المتجر يبيع الكثير من السلع المحلية الرائعة.

يزيد - ينمو Increase

E.g. To make something bigger or more.

As time passed, the tree increased in size.

أن تجعل شيء أكبر أو أكثر

مع مرور الوقت، <mark>زادت</mark> الشجرة في الحجم.

قرش Penny

عملة تساوى سنت واحد

E.g. A coin equal to one cent.

She has saved a lot of pennies to buy a new toy.

لقد ادخرت الكثير من القروش لتشتري لعبة جديدة.

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على

App Store Google Play ► YouTube



فكير بالانجليزي

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش



منفصل Separate

Not to be joined.

أن لا يكون متصل

Kelly separated her trash into different types for recycling.

فصلت كيلي نفاياتها إلى أنواع مختلفة لإعادة التدوير.

مجموع Total

عدد کل شیء تم حسابه

E.g. The number of everything counted.

There is a total of six apples: four in the basket and two out of it.

هناك مجموع ستة تفاحات: أربعة في السلة وإثنين منهما.

يغلف - يلف Wrap

أن تغطى باستخدام شيء

E.g. To cover with something.

Janet promised to wrap the gift before the party.

جانت وعدت بلف الهدية قبل الحفلة.

تقدر Appreciate

E.g. To understand the importance of a person or thing.

Everyone appreciates his hard work on the project. أن تفهم أهمية شخص أو شيء

الجميع يقدر عمله الشاق في المشروع.











يتجنب Avoid

To stay away from someone or something.

أن تبقى بعيداً عن شخص ما أو شيء ما

Sarah avoided Sam because she didn't like him.

ساره تجنبت سام لإنها لم تكن تحبه.

مناسب Convenient

من السهل القيام به وموفر للوقت

E.g. *Easy to do and time-saving.*The local stores stay open all night, which is very convenient.

تظل المتاجر المحلية مفتوحة طوال الليل، مما يجعلها ملائمة جداً.

زبون Customer

E.g. Someone who buys goods from a store.

Mark explains the difference between the items to his customers.

يشرح مارك الفرق بين العناصر لعملائه.

يهدم - يدمر Destroy

To cause something to end or not be of use anymore.

أن تتسبب في نهاية شيء أو جعله بدون فائدة.

E.g. | We did not expect the road to be destroyed in the storm.

لم نتوقع تدمير الطريق في العاصفة.











خائب الأمل Disappointed

To be unhappy because something is not as you expected.

أن تكون غير سعيد لأن شيئاً لم يكن كماً تتوقع.

The man was disappointed that he couldn't apply for the job.

شعر الرجل بخيبة أمل لأنه لم يستطيع التقدم لوظيفة.

متوسط Medium

حجمه بين الكبير والصغير

E.g. Of a size between big and small.

Most customers prefer the medium-size cakes at our bakery.

يفضل معظم العملاء الكعك المتوسط الحجم في مخبزنا.

نمط Pattern

Colors or shapes which are repeated on something.

الألوان أو الأشكال التي تتكرر على شيء ما.

They prefer paper with a simple pattern to cover their bedroom walls.

هم يفضلون ورق الحائط ذو النمط البسيط لتغطية جدران غرفة نومهم.

يمكنك أن تقول paper أو wallpaper.













قيمة Value

How much something costs.

کم تکلفة شیء

The value of houses has increased by ten percent this year.

زادت قيمة المنازل بنسبة عشرة في المئة هذا العام.

خدعة Trick

To make someone believe something that is not true.

أن تجعل شخص ما يصدق شيء غير صحيح. E.g. | Jenny tricked me when she put salt in my coffee.

چيني خدعتني عندما وضعت الملح في قهوتي.

يفشل - يرسب Fail

Not to succeed.

أن لا تنحم

Simon regretted not working hard when he failed the test.

ندم سايمون على عدم العمل بجدية حين <mark>رسب</mark> في الاختبار.











Exercise 1

Choose the correct word to complete the each sentence.

- 1. This avenue is (increased equal false) in length to the street we visited yesterday.
- 2. The old (wheel cloth total) on the sofa was torn and needed to be changed.
- 3. Bobby did so badly on his science test that he (separated flowed failed) it.
- 4. I had to (wrap separate pack) the two boys who were fighting in the playground.
- 5. The cost of flights to South America has (increased wrapped stolen) in the last year.

Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the correct words. One word will not be used.

total - wrapped - false - goods - fail - penny							
1. The police did not believe the thief because everything he had told them was							
2. The small shop in the village has a lot of for sale.							
3. She her baby in a blanket before going outside.							
4. I found a on the ground. I knew it would be a good day!							
5. The for one hat and two pairs of shoes comes to \$104.							











Exercise 3

Choose the word or phrase most similar in meaning to the underlined word.

- I really appreciate you bringing theses papers to my desk. 1.
- a)
- **b**) disappoint
- c) discover
- thank
- 2. Billy, you should not trick people. Nobody likes it.
- say untrue things to b) a)
- shine on
- be curious about d) c)
 - destroy
- 3. All of the flowers at the edge of the garden were destroyed.
- avoided a)
- **b**) protected
- c) damaged
- d) suggested
- 4. Wow! That is an interesting pattern on your shirt, Stephanie.
- smoke a)
- **b**) avenue
- c) sign
- d) design
- Helen, why are you avoiding me? Did I do something wrong? 5.
- keeping away from b) speaking to a)
- c) not appreciating
- d) disappearing from

The Answers

Exercise 1

- 1. equal
- 2. cloth
- 3. failed
- 4. separate
- 5. increased

Exercise 2

- 1. false
- 2. goods
- 3. wrapped
- 4. penny
- 5. total

Exercise 3

- 1. thank
- 2. say untrue thing to
- 3. damaged
- 4. design
- 5. keeping away from





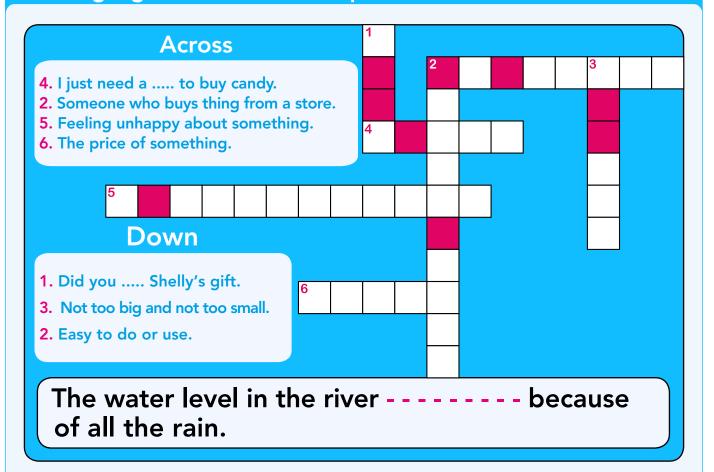






Exercise 4

Use the hints to complete the puzzle then make a word from the highlighted letters to complete the sentence.



The Answers

The water level in the river increased because of all the rain.













Garage sale

Garage sales are a fun and convenient way to find incredible things. You might find an item of great value wrapped in a piece of old cloth or packed in a broken box. But do not get too excited. You need to be careful not to get tricked. Some people will sell broken goods at their garage sales. Look carefully if you do not want to be disappointed or waste a single penny. A smart customer will avoid low-quality goods. I have found many things at garage sales. Once, I found two medium-sized chairs with an attractive pattern on them. I paid a total of \$15 for them. But when I looked on the internet, I discovered something. The real value of my chairs was \$200!

	Choose the correct Answer						
1.	This reading abo	ut	·				
a)	finding cloth	b)	being smart	c)	getting tricked	d)	garage sales
2.	2. People may find something of great at these sales.						
a)	total	b)	value	c)	cloth	d)	pattern
3.	Some pople may	try t	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
a)	increase the prices of goods		•	c)	trick customers	d)	disappoint customers
4. The writer bought chairs with							
a)	a pretty pattern	b)	a good penny	c)	cloth wrapping	d)	false value

The Answer							
1)	garage sales	2)	value	3)	trick customers	4)	a pretty pattern







olishists

المستوس الثانس

AMERICAN ENGLISH

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Only & Just

höö

Just = Only

She just goes out with her friends.

هي فقط تخرج مع أصدقائها.

She only goes out with her friends.

هي فقط تخرج مع أصدقائها.

We just know one guy with this name.

نحن فقط نعرف شخص واحد بهذا الاسم.

We only know one guy with this name.

نحن فقط نعرف شخص واحد بهذا الاسم.

I just have a little question here.

فقط لدى سؤال صغير هنا.

I only have a little question here.

فقط لدى سؤال صغير هنا.

I just wanted to say that I was think about you.

فقط أردت أن أقول أننى كنت أفكر بك.

I only wanted to say that I was think about you.

فقط أردت أن أقول أننى كنت أفكر بك.

I just wanted to talk to her.

فقط أردت أن أتحدث البها.

I only wanted to talk to her.

فقط أردت أن أتحدث البها.

I just eat vegetables.

I only eat vegetables.

أنا فقط أكل الخضروات.

أنا فقط أكل الخضروات.

Page 1 of 2







olishis

المستوس الثانس

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

AMERICAN ENGLISH

حدث وقع للتو Just ≠ Only

He just arrived. He only arrived. You'll never guess what just happened. You'll never guess what only happened.

لن تخمن أبداً الذي حدث للتو. لقد وصل للتو.

No, I'm not the person who just called. No, I'm not the person who only called.

لا، لست أنا الشخص الذي أتصل للتو.

Did you just call me? Did you only call me?

هل أتصلت بي للتو؟

بالضبط - تماما Just = Exactly

He looks just like his father.

هو بشبه والده تماماً.

He looks exactly like his father.

هو يشيه والده بالضبط.

That looks just like you, grandpa.

ذلك يشبهك تماماً يا جدي.

That looks exactly like you, grandpa.

ذلك يشبهك بالضبط يا جدي.

This looks just like your wedding.

هذا يشبه حفل زفافك تماما.

This looks exactly like your wedding.

هذا يشبه حفل زفافك بالضبط.

I know just what you're thinking.

أنا أعرف تماماً الذي تفكر فيه.

I know exactly what you're thinking.

أنا أعرف بالضبط الذي تفكر فيه.

This is just the right size for me.

هذا تماماً الحجم المناسب لي.

This is exactly the right size for me.

هذا بالضبط الحجم المناسب لي.

Page 2 of 2







· (ISh is)

المستوس الثانى

AMERICAN ENGLISH

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Idioms

لا تعالج الخطأ بخطأ آخر

Two wrongs don't make a right

If someone has done something bad to you, revenge will only make things worse. =just



He insulted my friend. Wait and see what I'll do.

No, man. Two wrongs don't make a right.



بنية هذا المصطلح هي بنية رياضية

$$5 + 5 = 10$$

Two fives make a ten

$$9 + 9 + 9 = 27$$

Three nines make twenty-seven

ما ضاع حقّ وراءَه مُطالب

The squeaky wheel gets the grease

You can get better services if you complain. If you wait patiently, nobody is going to care.

مادة الشحم Grease

مشحم - مزیت - مدهن Greasy

صوت صرير/زقزقة Squeak

يحدث صرير - يزيق Squeaky

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



Page

1 of 1





o (IShis)

المستوى الثانى

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Kick-ass

سلبي

يركل مؤخرة

Kick someone's ass

= Beat someone up

يضرب شخص ما ضرباً مبرحاً

= To physically attack someone

أن تهاجم شخص ما جسدياً

- Kick my ass. اضربني
- Of course you can kick his ass, son. طبعاً بمقدورك ضربه يا بنى

إيجابي

شیء رائع بشکل خرافی Kickass / Kick ass

الع Awesome والع

- This is your house? Wow, it is kickass. هذا منزلك؟ واو، أنه رائع
- There are a lot of movies I like but Avatar, man! That was kick ass.





- Is this a kickass location or what? إهل هذا موقع رائع ام ماذا؟
- He is a kickass accountant. أنه محاسب رائع
- She is a kick ass diver. إنها غواصة (غطاسة) رائعه

Page 1 of 2







olish من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

المستوى الثانى

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

إيجابي

للتشجيع

Kick some ass

- Go kick some ass. (ابهریهم) اذهبي واثبتي نفسك
- You can go out there and kick some ass. يمكنك الخروج للعالم وابهارهم

إيجابي

أصبحت ادرك شيء معين

Kick someone's ass

God, this lecture has kicked my ass and made me see the world in a totally different way.

يا الهي، هذه المحاضرة فتحت عيني وجعلتني أرى العالم بشكل مختلف تماماً.

Page 2 of 2







المستوس الثانس

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

Till & Until

حتی وقت کذا

Until

حتى - إلى أن (تستخدم مع الكلام الرسمي)

Till

حتى - إلى أن (تستخدم مع الكلام الغير الرسمى)

We played soccer until midnight.

لعبنا كرة القدم حتى منتصف الليل.

We played soccer till midnight.

لعبنا كرة القدم حتى منتصف الليل.

Until next time.

Till next time.

حتى المرة القادمة.

حتى المرة القادمة.

تستخدم until/till بعد كلمة

(لتحديد وقت بداية ونهاية شيء)

I work from 9 am until 5 pm. =to

أعمل من التاسعة صباحا وحتى الخامسة مساءً.

I work from 9 am till 5 pm. =to

أعمل من التاسعة صباحا وحتى الخامسة مساءً.

لا يمكن استخدام until/till مع الأعداد، الأرقام والمسافات

The car can take until seven people. The car can take up to seven people.

السيارة يمكن أن تأخذ حتى سبعة أشخاص.

The car can take till seven people. The car can take up to seven people.

السيارة يمكن أن تأخذ حتى سبعة أشخاص.

We walked from my house until the lake. We walked from my house up to the lake.

مشينا من بداية بيتي حتى البحيرة.

We walked from my house till the lake. We walked from my house up to the lake.

مشينا من بداية بيتي حتى البحيرة.

Page 1 of 2







o Ushid

المستوس الثانس

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش



لا يمكن استخدام until/till مع المستقبل

I will study the whole summer until the school will start.

I will study the whole summer until the school starts.

I will study the whole summer till the school will start.

I will study the whole summer until the school starts.

اليس قبل ذلك not until



Won't you tell me about what happened last night?

ألن تحبرني عما حدث ليلة أمس؟

Not until you tell me first. ليس قبل أن تخبرني أنت أولاً.



It always seems impossible until it's done

دائماً ما يبدو مستحيلاً حتى يتم تحقيقه

A woman is like a tea bag; you can't tell how strong she is until you put her in hot water

المرأة تشبه كيس الشاي، لا يمكنك معرفة مدى قوتها حتى تضعها في ماء ساخن

Page 2 of 2







CUShills

المستوس الثانس

AMERICAN ENGLISH

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Idioms



حد القلم أمضى من حد السيف The pen is mightier than the sword



Trying to convince people with ideas and words is more effective than trying to force people to do what you want.

محاولة إقناع الأشخاص بالأفكار والكلمات هو أكثر فعالية من محاولة إجبار الناس على فعل ما تريد.

Strong

(يقاوم أي تغيير يحصل عليه)

Mighty

(قادر على إحداث تغيير)

He is a strong man.

هو رجل قوى. (ليس من السهل هزمه)



He is a mighty man.

هو رجل ذو بطش. (قوى وقادر على إحداث تغيير)



He is a strong warrior.

هو محارب قوي. (ليس من السهل هزمه)



He is a mighty warrior.

هو محارب ذو بطش. (قوی وقادر علی إحداث تغییر)



This bridge is very strong.

هذا الجسر قوى جدا. (قادر على تحمل الكثير من السيارات)

لا يمكن أن نقول This bridge is mighty.

Page 1 of 2 الجبار - القهار Almighty









من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

المستوس الثانس

ENGLISE

They used to say the pen is mightier than the sword. I think the camera is.

اعتادوا أن يقولوا أن حد القلم أمضى من حد السيف أعتقد أن الكاميرا أمضى.

الصورة تغنى عن ألف كلمة



A picture is worth a thousand words صورة تساوى ألف كلمة.

إبق أصدقائك قريبون منك و أعدائك أقرب Keep your friends close, keep your enemies closer

If you have an enemy, pretend to be friends with them instead of openly fighting with them. That way you can watch them carefully and figure out what they're planning.

اذا كان لدبك عدو، تظاهر أن تكون صديقاً له بدلاً من القتال علانية معه. وبهذه الطريقة بمكنك مشاهدته بعناية ومعرفة ما يخطط له.

Page 2 of 2







o (Ishib)

المستوس الثاني

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

كلمات عامية

Epic

ملحمة

(تستخدم مع الكلام الرسمى)

I enjoyed reading the epic tale of Hayreddin Barbarossa.

. It's epic food لقد استمتعت بقراءة القصة الملحمية لخير الدين بربروسا.

Epic

= Excellent ممتاز (تستخدم مع الكلام الغير رسمي)

It's epic. انه ممتاز

إنه طعام ممتاز

Epic win

فوز ملحمي

Boy! That was an epic win for Dre.

کان هذا فوز ملحمی لـ دری.



Epic fail

فشل ذريع

What an epic fail for the goalkeeper.

يا له من فشل ذريع لحارس المرمى.



اذا التدأت الحملة لـ ... What a/an يكون المعنى يا له/لها من كذا

What an easy test!

What a woman!

يا لما من امرأة!

What a good man!

What a horrible thing to say!

یا له من شیء فظیع لتقوله!

يا له من رجل طيب!

یا له من امتحان سهل!

Page 1 of 2







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

المستوس الثانس

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

اللعنة Damn

(تستخدم للتذمر أو السب)

اللعنة علىك.

Damn you.

Damn you people.

لعنكم الله يا قوم.

Dang = Damn

(تستخدم في الكلام الرسمي أو لحفظ مقام الشخص الذي أمامك)

Damn = Wow

(تستخدم للتعسر عن الاستغراب، الدهشة أو المفاحأة)

Damn! You look beautiful.

Wow! You look beautiful.

انتى تبدين جميلة.

انتی تبدین جمیلة.

Dammmn Gina! اللعنة يا جينا!

(هذه الجملة مقتبسه من مسلسل Martin)

Page 2 of 2







o Ishio من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

المستوس الثانس

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

Start & Begin

Start

(تستخدم مع الكلام الرسمي)

Begin

(تستخدم مع الكلام الأكثر رسمية)

He started working with us two years ago.

هو بدأ العمل معنا منذ سنتين.

He began working with us two year ago.

هو بدأ العمل معنا منذ سنتين.

I'd like to start my speech with...

أود أن ابدأ خطابي ب...

I'd like to begin my speech with...

أود أن ابدأ خطابي ب...

Start

يبدأ - يشغل

Start the computer.

Begin the computer.



Start the washing machine.

ابدأ - شغل الغسالة.

ابدأ - شغل الكمبيوتر.

Begin the washing machine.



Won't start

لا يبدأ/يعمل/يفتح

My phone won't start.

My phone won't begin.



هاتفي لا يعمل.

Page 1 of 2









من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Start

ىىدأ (فعل) البدء (اسم)

The Start

البداية (اسم)

Begin

يبدأ (فعل)

The beginning

البداية (اسم)

- I told you from the start. قلت لك من البداية
- I told you from the beginning. قلت لك من البداية

AMERICAN ENGLISH

> Growth begins when we begin to accept our own weaknesses.

> > يبدأ النمو والازدهار حين نبدأ قبول ضعفنا.

Page 2 of 2







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش



Idioms



المركب التي لها رئيسين تغرق Too many cooks spoil the broth

كثرة الطباخين تفسد الطبخة

When there are too many people trying to lead, the results are always bad. Jobs and projects should have only one strong leader.

حين يكون هناك العديد من الأشخاص يحاولون القيادة، تكون النتائج دائماً سيئة. ينبغي أن يكون للوظائف والمشاريع قائد واحد فقط قوي.

Spoil

Spoil

یفسد (یدلع)

She ate spoiled food and got sick.

أكلت طعام فاسد ومرضت.

Jack spoiled his children.

چاك أفسد أولاده.

Page 1 of 3







elishis

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش



AMERICAN ENGLISH

Chicken soup



Eat soup

- eat إذا كنت تشرب الحساء (الشورية) بالملعقة.

- drink إذا كنت تشرب الحساء (الشوربة) في كوب أو تشربها بقشرة الشرب (شفاطة).

Chicken broth

Broth is thin soup.



Eat broth



Drink broth

القرش الأبيض ينفع في اليوم الأسود A penny saved is a penny earned

القرش الذي تدخره، هو قرش مكتسب.

Save your money. Saving money is just like making money.

ادخر أموالك. ادخار الأموال هو تماماً ككسبها.



Page 2 of 3







المستوى الثانى

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش





You can't make an omelet without breaking a few eggs

لن تقدر عمل عجة البيض بدون كسر بعض البيض

When you try to do something great, you'll probably make a few people angry. Don't worry about those people. Just focus on the good results.

حين تحاول فعل شيء عظيم من المحتمل أن تغضب بعض الأشخاص، لا تقلق بشأنهم. فقط ركز على النتائج الإيجابية.

Page 3 of 3







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Such & Such that

such + noun

كمذا - كمذه

تستخدم للإشارة إلى ما سبق ذكره. وفي هذا الاستخدام كلمة such يليها اسم، وإذا كان الاسم مفرد لا نضع له أداة (a/an).

There's no such place.

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

Hard to imagine such cruelty.

صعب تخيل قسوة كهذه.

Have you heard of such men?

هل سمعتم برجال کهذا؟ (۞ عمرك سمعت عن حد زي كده؟۞)

She made no such promise.

لم تقطع وعداً كهذا.

We're not interested in such information.

لا يوجد مكان كهذا.

لسنا مهتمین بمعلومه کهذه.



Did she tell you she's pregnant?

هل اخبرتك إنها حامل؟

أنا لا أهتم بمعلومة كهذه.

I don't care about such information.



Page 1 of 2







olishis

المستوس الثانس

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

such + adjective + noun

such = very وفي هذا الاستخدام كلمة such عليها صفة، وإذا كان الاسم مفرد نضع له أداة (a/an).

She is such a beautiful girl.

ENGLISH

هي فتاة جميلة جداً.

She is such a brave girl.

هی بنت شجاعة جدا.

That was such a fun night.

تلك كانت ليلة ممتعة جدا.

It is such a fun movie.

أنه فيلم ممتع جداً.

such + adjective + noun + that لدرحة أن

في هذا الاستخدام إذا كان الاسم مفرد نضع له أداة (a/an).

It is such a fun movie that I don't want it to end.

أنه فيلم ممتع جداً لدرجة أننى لا أريده أن ينتهى.

She is such a famous actress that my cat knows her.

أنها ممثلة مشهورة جداً لدرجة أن قطتى تعرفها.

الخلاصة

such

noun

کهذا - کهذه =

such + a/an + adjective + noun

حداً =

such + a/an + adjective + noun + that = لدرجة أن

Page 2 of 2







o USNE من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

المستوى الثانى

AMERICAN ENGLISH

Idioms

There's no time like the present

لا يوجد وقت أفضل من الحاضر

If you need to do something, don't wait for a better chance later. Do it now. There is no better time.

إذا كنت بحاجة إلى القيام بشيء ما، فلا تنتظر فرصة أفضل لاحقاً. أفعلها الآن. ليس هناك وقت أفضل.



When do you think I should tell her that I love her?

متى تعتقد أنه يجب أن أقول لها أننى أحبها؟

تعرف ما يقولون. لا يوجد وقت أفضل من الحاضر.

You know what they say. There's no time like the present.



Good things come to those who wait

الأشياء الطيبة تأتى لأولئك الذين ينتظرون

Be patient. later, something good will happen to you.

كن صبوراً. في وقت لاحق، سوف يحدث شيء جيد لك.

Page 1 of 2









AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

The grass is always greener on the other side of the fence

العشب هو دائماً أكثر أخضرارا على الجانب الآخر من السياج

People always want whatever they don't have.

الناس دائماً تريد أياً كان الذي لا يملكونه.





Page 2 of 2







ENGLISH

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

كلمات عامية

Bye, Felicia

مع السلامة يا فيليشا

أغرب عن وجهي 😍 غور في دهيه 🗣)

(هذه الجملة مقتبسه من فيلم Friday)



Can I borrow your car?

هل يمكن أن استعير سیارتك؟

کلا، أغرب عن وجهي.

No, bye Felicia.



Frenemy

(friend/enemy)

ليس صديق وليس عدو

John and I are frenemies.

أنا و چون لسنا أصدقاء ولسنا أعداء.

We're frenemies.

نحن أصدقاء/أعداء،

Page 1 of 2







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش



النميمة - تناول الإشاعات

I'm bored. What should we do?

أشعر بالملل. ماذا يجب أن نفعل؟

Let's call Sarah. She always has the tea.

لنتصل بسارة، دائماً لديها الإشاعات.



Spill the tea اخبرني النميمة

Have you heard what Monica did?

هل سمعت ما فعلته مونيكا؟

No, I haven't. Come on spill the tea.

لا، لم اسمع. هيا اخبرني.



Page 2 of 2

AMERICAN ENGLISH







AMERICAN ENGLISH

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Need & Want

Need

بحتاج

(تعبر عن ضرورة ملحة)

Want

پرید

(تعبر عن رغبة)

يرجع الاستخدام لرأي الشخص للشيء، هل هذا الشيء بحاجه إليه للرغبة فقط، أم للضرورة أو المبالغة.

I need to go to the bathroom.

أنا احتاج للذهاب إلى الحمام.

I want to go to the bathroom.

أنا أريد أن أذهب إلى الحمام.

I need a glass of water.

أنا بحاجة إلى كوب ماء.

I want a glass of water.

أنا لدي رغبة في كوب ماء.

I need this toy.

أنا احتاج هذا اللعبة.

I want this toy.

أنا أريد هذا اللعبة.

Honey, we need a bigger refrigerator.

نحتاج لثلاجة أكبر يا حبيبي.

Honey, we want a bigger refrigerator.

نرید ثلاجة أكبر یا حبیبی.

I need your name and address.

احتاج اسمك وعنوانك.

Daddy, I want a squirrel.

أبي، أريد سنجاب.

I didn't need a friend, I needed a father.

لم اكن احتاج إلى صديق، كنت احتاج إلى أب.

I need the codes.

احتاج الأكواد.

Page 1 of 1







AMERICAN ENGLISH

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Idioms

A chain is only as strong as its weakest link

قوة السلسة تساوى قوة أضعف حلقاتها



A group can only be as successful as its least successful person.

تكون المجموعة ناجحة بنفس مقدار نجاح أقل أعضائها.

Empty vessels make the most noise

الأوعية الفارغة تصدر أكبر ضوضاء





Empty and stupid people are the most talkative.

الأشخاص الفارغين والأغبياء هم الأكثر ثرثرة.

Page 1 of 2







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش



لا تحكم على الكتاب من عنوانه / غلافه You can't judge a book by its cover

لا يمكنك الحكم على كتاب من غلافه





AMERICAN ENGLISH

Wow, can you believe it?

What, the food?



Yeah, such an amazing food from such a small restaurant!

> Yeah, I guess it is true that you can't judge a book by its cover.



Page 2 of 2









المستوس الثانى



كلمات عامية

Lowkey

في السر

low key = secretly

I lowkey love her, but I don't think I will ever tell her.

She always comes late to work now, what's her problem?

هي دائماً تأتي للعمل متأخراً الّآن، ما خطبها؟

I think she low key wants to get fired.

أظن إنها سرياً تريد أن يتم طردها.



Highkey

في العلن

I high key eat healthy, but I low key want some junk food.

أنا في العلن أتناول أكل صحى، ولكن في السر أنا أريد طعام سريع.

lowkey

حاجة على الضيق

Penny and I just wanna do something lowkey.

أنا و بيني عاوزين نعمل حاجة ع الضيق.

Page 1 of 2







المستوس الثانس







Salty غاضب

Yeah well, that's some salty language.

نعم حسنا، هذه لغة غاضبة. = لهجة حادة

Ouch, you stepped on my foot!

أي، لقد دست على قدمي.



Oh my god. I'm so sorry, I didn't see it there.

يا إلهي، أنا أسف جداً، لم أرها هناك.

Come on, man. Don't be so salty. I said sorry.

خلاص يا أخى. لا تكن غاضب للغاية قلت آسف.

Woke

ىقظ (سياسيا)

تستخدم في اليقظة السياسية فقط، ولا يمكن استخدامها في غير ذلك

You can't fool Egyptians, they're woke now.

لا يمكنك خداع المصريين، إنهم يقظين (سياسياً) الآن.

If you're so woke why didn't you vote?

بما أنك تفهم في السياسة، لماذا لا تدلى بصوتك؟

Page 2 of 2







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

AMERICAN ENGLISH

Each & Every

Each

کا،

(تستخدم للإشارة إلى مفرد)

Every

(تستخدم للإشارة إلى جمع)

I visited each country in the world.

أنا زرت كل دولة في العالم.

I visited every country in the world.

أنا زرت كل دول العالم.

= I visited all the countries in the world.

Now, the next time you hear this whistle, each one of you get one toy.

الآن في المرة القادمة تسمعون هذه الصفارة، كل واحد منَّكم يحضر لعبة واحدة. Everyone out.

کله پخرج برا (فلیخرج الجمیع)

Each one of you is a desperate wish for love

كل واحدة فيكم هي أمنية يائسة للحب.

Everyone wants to get rich.

الكل بريد أن يكون غنياً.

Each

(تستخدم للإشارة إلى مثنى)

Every

(لا تستخدم للإشارة إلى مثنى)

He wears a watch on each hand.

هو پرتدې ساعة على كل پد من پديه.

He wears a watch on every hand.

Each one of my parents is a banker.

كل واحد من والدى يعمل في بنك.

Every one of my parents is a banker.

Page 1 of 2







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Each

Every

يمكن استخدام every و each في نفس الجملة بغرض التشديد وإظهار المعنى

للصورة العامة

AMERICAN ENGLISH

He knows everyone in his town.

هو يعرف كل الناس في قريته.

لإظهار المعنى بصورة أقوى

He knows each one in his town.

هو يعرف كل واحد في قريته.

للتشديد على المعنى (للمبالغة)

He knows each and every one in his town.

هو يعرف كل الناس في قريته واحد واحد.



He knows every word in the dictionary.



He knows each word in the dictionary.



He knows each and every word in the dictionary.

Page 2 of 2







حلقة المستوى الثانى

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

كلمات عامية

Hundo P 100%

= Hundred Percent



AMERICAN

ENGLISH

That's a beautiful house, right?



Hundo P.

Oh well

تعبر عن عدم الرضا



Hey, man! Wanna go to the beach?

Oh well.

Hundo P it's going to rain.



Page 1 of 2

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على







App Store Google Play

المستوى الثانى

AMERICAN ENGLISH

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Friday Jr

Jr = Junior

Friday Jr = Thursday

I'm not gonna come to work tomorrow or Friday, so I guess I'm gonna see you on Friday Jr.

لن آتي إلى العمل غداً ولا يوم الجمعة، إذاً أظن إني سأراك يوم الخميس.

Junior الأصغر سناً

Senior الأكبر سناً

Mosey

يسير مبتعدا

= Walk away

Hey, what are you looking at? Mosey, Pal.

إلى ماذا تنظر؟ ابتعد يا صاح.

Pal = Friend

Page 2 of 2









Photo, Picture and Image

Photo

صورة ملتقطه بواسطة كاميرا



Picture



Image

تشمل جميع أنواع الصور وتشمل أيضاً صورة في مخيلتك



Image

صورة

Imagine

يتخيل

Imagination

التخيل / الخيال

I'm sorry. I can't come with you. I care about my image.

أنا آسف. لا أستطيع أن آتي معك. أهتم بصورتي قدام الناس.

Page 1 of 1

AMERICAN ENGLISH







حلقة المستوس الثانس

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

كلمات عامية

Pill

مزعج - مضایق

= Annoying



AMERICAN

ENGLISH

I invited Claire to dinner.

invited to dinner = invited for dinner

Why? You know I don't like her, she is a pill.



Why did you shout at him?

لماذا صرخت فيه؟



Because he is acting like a pill and I can't focus.

لأنه يتصرف تصرفات مزعجة ولا استطيع التركيز.

Page 1 of 3







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Chill

يبرد - يشعر بالبرد المعنى الرسمي

I chill my coke in the refrigerator.

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

أنا ابرد الكوكا في الثلاجة.

Chill

يسترخى

= Relax

I'm gonna go sit under that tree and chill for a while.

سأذهب للجلوس تحت تلك الشجرة واسترخى لبعض الوقت.

Chill

اهدأ

= Calm down

- Just chill, ok? فقط اهدأ

- Chill out.



Oh my god, oh my god, oh my god. I lost my car keys.

Shhh just chill, I'll help you find them.



Page 2 of 3











Take a chill pill

أهدى وقول هديت



Why are you still here?

Aren't you going to work?

Do you know what time it is?

Come on don't be late, you'll be in trouble.



Just take a chill pill.



Excuse me, which bus goes to Victoria Square?

Same difference

لا پوجد فرق (ᢏزی بعضᢏ)





Ummm, You can take this bus or that bus, same difference.

They are the same

No difference

3 of 3

Page









من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

AMERICAN ENGLISH

Other & Another

Another

إضافي (ثان) - بديل

I'm very hungry. Can you give me another sandwich?

أنا جائع جداً. هل تستطيع أن تعطيني ساندوتش إضافي.

I'm not free on Saturday, let's meet another day.

أنا مشغول يوم السبت، دعنا نتقابل يوم آخر.

Other

(پلیها جمع - اسم غیر معدود)

Another

(پلیها اسم مفرد معدود)

You're talking about this money, but I'm talking about other money.

أنت تتحدث عن هذا المال. لكننى أتحدث عن أموال أخرى.

Why did you buy another car? One is enough.

لماذا اشتريت سيارة أخرى؟ واحدة تكفى.

I know it. Other guys know it, too.

أنا أعرف هذا، أشخاص <mark>آخرين</mark> أيضاً يعرفون هذا.

I will give you another address.

سأعطيك عنوان آخر.

There's other candy too besides chocolate.

هناك حلوى أخرى أيضاً الشيكولاتة.

Just another minute, please.

فقط دقيقة إضافية من فضلك.

Like so many other things in life.

مثل أشياء أخرى كثيرة في الحياة.

let's try this another way.

دعنا نحرب هذا بطريقة أخرى (بديله).

Any other drugs in the house?

أي مخدرات أخرى في المنزل؟

There was other stuff, too.

كان هناك أشياء أخرى أيضاً.

Page 1 of 2







o (Shib)

المستوس الثاني

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

الخُلاصة

Other

AMERICAN ENGLISH

في الأحوال العادية

- يليها جمع

- يليها اسم غير معدود

Another

- لا يمكن أن يليها جمع
- لا يمكن أن يليها اسم غير معدود
 - يمكن أن يليها رقم

الأرقام أحياناً تستخدم كمفرد

I will stay for another twenty minutes.

سأبقى لمدة عشرين دقيقة أخرى.

Twenty is my favorite number.

عشرون هو رقمى المفضل.

I really like Kuwait, I think I will stay another 5 years.

أنا حقاً أحب الكويت. أعتقد أننى سأبقى 0 سنوات أخرى.

I need another 7 million euros.

أحتاج ٧ ملايين يورو إضافية.

Beat up another 10-year-old?

تضرب آخر ذو ۱۰ سنوات.

🛕 تنبیه: سندرس الفرق بینهما بتفصیل أکثر فی مستوی آخر.

Page 2 of 2







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

No, Not and None

No noun is not a verb. Simply, none.

No

تستخدم مع الأسماء

She has no money.

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

ليس لديها مال.

No idea is stupid.

لا بوحد فكرة غبية.

There is no doubt in my

لا يوجد أي شك في عقلي.

No, that was No joke.

كلا، تلك لم تكن مزحه (نكته).

Not

تستخدم مع الأفعال

And thanks for not getting yourself killed.

وشكرا لعدم قتل نفسك.

You're not going with us.

لن تأتى معنا.

Not knowing when to shut up.

عدم معرفة متى تصمت.

None

تستخدم للتبسيط والاختصار

Do you have any plans for tomorrow?

- I have none.
- None.

I have none = I have no plans

How many friends came to your party?

- None came.
- None.

None came = No friend came

مع نفى الأزمنة Not

تستخدم مع الأسماء، الأفعال، ...الخ

I'm not a doctor.

We are not farmers.

She is not sleeping.

Page 1 of 1







AMERICAN ENGLISH

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Phrasal Verbs

الفعل المركب: هو فعل مكون من عدة كلمات.

Ask out

I really like Lisa. I think I will ask her out.

ask her out = ask her to go out on a date

Look, I don't normally ask out women that I meet in coffee houses. لعلمك، أنا في العادة لا أطلب الخروج مع النساء التي أقابلهن في المقاهي.

Ask around

To ask many people around you the same question.

I asked around but nobody has seen my bicycle.

Well, ask around.



It's so expensive.

Ok, I will ask around.

Page 1 of 2







AMERICAN ENGLISH

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Care for ...?

تحب أن …؟ (تستخدم في العامية فقط)

Care for a ride?

Care for some ice cream?

تحب أن أوصلك؟

تحب أن تاخد چيلاتي؟

Care for

يحب - يعجب = Like

Tim doesn't care for his friends. They are always rude to him.

هو لا يحب أصدقائه. هم دائما وقحون معه.

I don't care for your tone.

أنا لا تعجبني نبرتك.

= I don't like your tone.

I don't care for this at all.

لا يعجبني هذا على الإطلاق.

I don't care for the way you've ironed my shirts, Dave.

أنا لا تعجبني الطريقة التي كويت بها قمصاني يا ديڤ.



Page 2 of 2







المستوس الثانس



Such & So

Such

حداً Very = (تستخدم قبل الصفة أو الحال) بشرط أن يأتي بعدها اسم

So

حداً Very = (تستخدم قبل الصفة أو الحال) بشرط أن لا يأتي بعدها اسم

You are such a kind person.

أنت شخص طبب جداً.

You are so kind.

أنت طيب جداً.

She came so quickly.

هي جاءت بسرعة <mark>جداً</mark>.

She is so smart.

هې ذکية <mark>جداً</mark>.

She is so smart girl. X

You are so beautiful, Sarah.

أنت جميلة جدا يا سارة.

الاسم لم يأتي بعدها، لأن الـ comma فصلت بينهما.

تم شرح such بالتفصيل في الحلقة رقم ٩ من هذا الكورس

تشاهد الحلقة ٩ قم بالنقر على هذا الزر

Such

A lot of تستخدم قبل

تستخدم قبل (Much - Many - Few)

Late so a lot of food.

You have so few good ideas, Leonard.

لديك القليل جداً من الأفكار الجيدة يا لينارد.

.Michael, I hated you for so many years أكلت الكثير جداً من الطعام.

مايكل، لقد كرهتك لسنوات عديدة جداً.

الخُلاصة

So

+ adjective/adverb

حداً =

جداً = Such + a/an + adjective/adverb + noun

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



Page

1 of 1





من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

Need to, Have to and Must

Need to	Have to	Must
احتياج للأهمية	ضرورة (تجنباً لعواقب)	ضرورة (تجنباً لعواقب)
It's important to	or else	or else
اختياري	ليس اختياري (إجباري)	ليس اختياري (إجباري)
Everywhere 💮	US more	UK more
Formal/Informal	Formal/Informal	Formal

يجب أن اذهب للبيت.

I have to go home. يجب أن اذهب للبيت.

I must go home. يجب أن اذهب للبيت.

Sir, we need to ask you some questions. نحتاج أن نسألك بعض الأسئلة يا سيد. I need to find my brother and mother. احتاج أن أجد أخى وأمى.

You need to get up.

I need to go home.

يجب أن تستيقظ.

You need to tell her how you feel. يجب أن تخبرها كيف تشعر.

I have to go to the bathroom. Now. يجب أن اذهب إلى الحمام. الآن. Joey, you have to tell her what's going on. چوی، پچپ آن تخبرها بما پحدث.

I must go to the bathroom. Now. يجب أن اذهب إلى الحمام. الآن. I must do my homework this evening. يجب أن أعمل واجبى هذا المساء.

I need to... = It's important for me to...

I need to study hard.

= It's important for me to study hard.

It's Mother's Day. I need to call my mom.

= It's Mother's Day. It's important for me to call my mom.

Page 1 of 1







AMERICAN ENGLISH

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

Idioms

Hot potato

أمر حساس / أمر شائك





What kind of name is Avram? Is he a Jew?

ما هذا الاسم الغريب، أڤرام؟ هل هو يهودي؟

I never ask people about their religions. It's hot potato.

أنا لا اسأل الناس عن دينهم. إنه أمر حساس.



What kind of ...? تدل على الاستغراب من شيء ما

What kind of a question is that?

أي سؤال غبي هو هذا؟ (◘إيه السؤال الغبي دهـ◘)

What kind of a stupid name is that?

Page 1 of 2







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

AMERICAN ENGLISH

Gun control is a hot potato now in the United States.

السيطرة على السلاح هي قضية شائكة الآن في الولايات المتحدة.

Abortion is a hot potato in many countries around the world.

الإجهاض قضية شائكة في العديد من الدول حول العالم.

Hot potato

هذا المصطلح مأخوذ من مصطلح

Drop ... like a hot potato

After seeing the price on the t-shirt, I dropped it like a hot potato.

بعد رؤية السعر على الـ تى شيرت، تركته سريعاً.



After seeing the price on the t-shirt, I dropped it like it's hot. (تستخدم بكثرة في كلام الشارع)

We wanted to go to the beach but Michael didn't so, we dropped him like a hot potato.

Page 2 of 2







المستوى الثانى

AMERICAN ENGLISH

A lot of & Lots of

A lot of

الكثير من...

رسمی / غیر رسمی

معدود / غیر معدود

Lots of

الكثير من...

غیر رسمی

معدود / غیر معدود

Ok, that's a lot of money.

حسناً، ذلك مال كثير.

Lots of money and free time.

مال كثير ووقت فراغ كثير.

A lot of things happened on that trip.

الكثير من الأشياء حدثت في تلك الرحلة.

Lots of things.

الكثير من الأشياء.

X alot of وليس a lot of تكتب



Page 1 of 1









In the end & At the end

In the end في النهاية

I studied hard, and in the end, I passed the test.

أنا ذاكرت بجد وفي النهاية اجتزت الاختبار.

At the end في نهاية...

At the end of the movie, everyone clapped.

في نهاية الفيلم. صفق الجميع.

We all die in the end.

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

كلنا نموت في النهاية.

I was at the end of this path.

كنت في نهاية هذا الممر.

Page 1 of 1







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

As & Like

الأكاديمي القديم

As

las

عبارة اسمية + As

He speaks as a native speaker does.

هو يتحدث كما يفعل المتحدث الأصلى.

Like

مثلً

ضمير/اسم + Like

He speaks like a native speaker.

هو يتحدث مثلً المتحدث الأصلى.

Don't act as I do. = Don't act as I act.

لا تتصرف مثلي.

Don't act like me.

لا تتصرف مثلي.

Do as I say.

AMERICAN

ENGLISH

أفعل كما أقول. (⊋أعمل زي ما بقولك⊋)

He is tall like his father.

هو طويل مثلً والده.

Nobody knows him as I do.

لا أحد يعرفه كما أعرفه أنا.

My house looks like a castle.

منزلي يشبه القلعة.

She has a headache like me.

لديها صداع مثلى.

Page 1 of 2







من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

AMERICAN ENGLISH

الأكاديمي الحديث

Like

مثلً/کما

(تستخدم مع الكل)

Don't act like I do.

Don't act like me.

لا تتصرف كما أفعل.

لا تتصرف مثلى.

Do like I say.

Do like me.

افعل كما أقول.

افعل مثلى.

Wanted her to travel around Europe like he did.

أرادها أن تسافر في جميع أنحاء أوروبا كما فعل هو.

As

بصفته كذا

As your close friend, I have to tell you to stop.

بصفتى صديقك المقرب، يجب أن أخبرك أن تتوقف.

I will ask you as your mother who wants you to live.

سوف اسألك، بصفتى أمك التي تريدك أن تعيش.

Speaking as your lawyer, I'm always looking for billable hours.

أتكلم بصفتي المحامي الخاص بك، أنا دائماً أبحث عن ساعات مفوترة (مدفوعه).

Page 2 of 2







المستوى الثاني



History, Historic and Historical

History

التاريخ - علاقة بين طرفين - الماضي/الذكريات

I just agreed to meet with you because Why should I live in history, huh? we have a history.

أنا فقط وافقت على المقابلة معك لأن بيننا علاقة سابقة.

لماذا على أن أعيش في الماضي، ها؟

I Love history.

أنا أحب التاريخ

Historic

الحقيقة الثابتة في التاريخ

There is a historic hatred

between India and Pakistan.

هناك كراهية تاريخية بين الهند وباكستان.

شهير جدا منذ زمن

مهم جدا

I visited the historic Cairo Tower many times.

> لقد زرت برج القاهرة التاريخي العديد من المرات.

The president will come to our city for the first time. It will be a historic day.

سوف يأتي الرئيس إلى مدينتنا للمرة الأولى. سيكون يوم تاريخي.

Tunisia is full of historic sites.

Today is a historic day for me, Janet finally told me she loved

> اليوم هو يوم تاريخي بالنسبة لي، لأن چانیت أخيراً قالت لی أنها تحبنی.

تونس مليئة بالمواقع التاريخية.

Historical

حدث تم منذ فترة - شيء مبنى على أحداث تاريخية

The historical battle of Yarmouk was in It's based on historical events. the year 636.

مبنى على أحداث تاريخية.

معركة اليرموك التاريخية كانت في سنه ٦٣٦.

It's a historical novel.

إنها رواية تاريخية

Page 1 of 1







المستوس الثانس

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش

AMERICAN ENGLISH

Special, Specially and Especially

Special

استثنائی (متمیز)

You're so special to me.

أنت استثنائي جداً بالنسبة لي.

He has some special skills.

لديه بعض المهارات الاستثنائية. (متميز)

All parents think their kids are special. But you are special.

جميع الآباء يعتقدون أن أطفالهم استثنائيون.

ولكنك استثنائية. (متميزة)

Some of my students need special attention.

بعض طلابي يحتاجون أهتمام استثنائي.

Specially

خصيصاً (لأجل هدف محدد)

Specially made car.



سيارة صنعت خصيصاً.

Adewale is specially trained to kill.



He bought a specially made car.

هو أشتري سيارة صنعت خصيصاً.

Daniel Craig is wearing a suit that was specially designed for him.

دانیل کریج پرتدی بدلة تم تصمیمها خصیصاً من أجله.

Especially

لا سيها (بالذات)

I love my family, especially my mom.

أنا أحب عائلتي، بالذات أمي.

I love all my friends, especially Phil.

أحب كل أصدقائي، لا سيما فيل.

Don't say anything, especially you.

White and black, especially black.

لا تقولوا أي شيء، بالذات أنت.

الشخص الأبيض و الأسود، لا سيما الشخص الأسود.

Page 1 of 1







المستوس الثانس

من قناة ذا أمريكان إنجلش



خطأ شائع



- 1. الأرقام هي صفات.
- الأرقام إذا لم يليها الاسم الموصوف لا يحدث تغيير.
- 3. الأرقام إذا ذكر بعدها الاسم الموصوف يحدث ٣ تغييرات:
 - نضيف أداة إذا كان الاسم الموصوف مفرد.
 - نضع شرطة بين كل صفة والتانية.
 - نجعل الكلمات مفردة.

He is three years old.	She has a three-year-old son.
هو عمره ۳ سنوات.	لدیها ابن عمره ۳ سنوات.
This street is five meters wide.	This is a five-meter-wide street.
هذا الشارع عرضه خمسة أمتار.	هذا شارع يبلغ عرضه خمسة أمتار.
The boys are 10 years old.	They are 10-year-old boys.
الأولاد عمرهم ١٠ سنوات.	أنهم أولاد عمرهم ١٠ سنوات.

صحح الأخطاء في الجمل الآتية، أن وجدت

This is 10 pages document.	•••••
I waited a 48-hour.	•••••
The boat is a 7-meter-long. It is 7 meters long boat.	
I only stay in five stars hotels.	
She works a 12-hour shift.	•••••
Our trip was 9 hours.	•••••
This is 50 kilograms bag.	

Page 1 of 1









A Drunk Pilot

There were 102 passengers on the plane.

They were waiting for the plane to take off.

But the plane was just sitting there.

The plane could not take off without

a pilot. The co-pilot was already on board. But the pilot

wasn't. where was the pilot? The flight attendants

didn't know. The co-pilot didn't know.

The passengers didn't know. Finally, the pilot

got on the plane. He was singing and laughing.

He waved to all the passengers. He said hello.

He told them his name-three times.

His eyes were bloodshot.









His breath smelled of alcohol. He said, "Are you all ready to fly? We're going to fly! We're going to fly high into the sky!" A passenger close to him was angry. "why are you so late?" the pilot said, "I'm not late-you're early!" He laughed at his own joke. "You're drunk!" the passenger said. He dialed 911. The police came. They talked to the pilot. They took him off the plane. He was still laughing and singing. "Mom, if the police take the pilot to jail, who will fly our plane?" a little boy asked his mother. The flight attendant announced that a new pilot would arrive shortly. Many passengers looked at their watches.









Explanation

On

AMERICAN

ENGLISH

تستخدم مع وسائل المواصلات التي يمكنك ان تسير تستخدم مع وسائل المواصلات التي يمكنك ان تسير تستخدم مع وسائل المواصلات التي يمكنك ان تسير بداخلها للوصول إلى المقعد

On the plane - On the boat
On the train - On the bus

In the car - In the taxi

In

Sitting

(ثابت لا يتحرك)

الجلوس في اللغه الإنجليزية لا يخص البشر والحيوانات فقط بل أيضاً يخص الجماد

But the plane was just sitting there.

Co- ...

Co-pilot

هو مساعد الطيار وهو أقل خبرة من الـpilot

Co-teacher

هو مدرس مساعد ولا يقل خبرة عن الـteacher

Co-director

هو مخرج متخصص في شيء معين والـdirector متخصص في شيء آخر

Bloodshot







عورس اله

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

المستوى الثاني

حلقة



Flight attendant = Cabin crew

Air host **Steward**



Air hostess **Stewardess**



smelled of ... كانت تفوح من فلان رائحة كذا laugh at يضحك على his own joke نكته نفسه

Drink

المشروبات بشكل عام

- In Ramadan, Muslims don't eat or drink during the day.
- Angels don't need to eat, drink, or sleep.

الكحل

- Do you drink?
- I don't drink.
- The only problem I have with Tom is that he drinks a lot.

Fly

Tell = Announce = Say

Drive



Pilots fly planes.



I drive my car.









مناظرة طريفة

The cat and the dog were talking. The cat said, "Humans treat us better than you. If we turn up our noses at the cat food they serve us, they buy us another brand.



If we're sleepy, we can sleep on the pillows in their beds."



The dog said, "But humans take us out for walks. They throw Frisbees for us to catch. They put us in their tubs and give us baths."



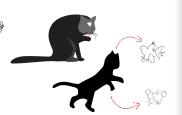








The cat said, "They don't take us for walks because there's a litter box in the house. If we want to catch something, we catch birds or mice. They don't give us baths because we clean ourselves.



And one more thing-they respect our independence. They don't put a chain on our neck and a leash on the chain."



The dog said, "I'd rather have a leash than have their kids pulling my tail all the time."













AMERICAN

ENGLISH

والبل الفيصر

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

المستوى الثاني



Humans

Treat (verb) تعامل

البشر

Humans treat us...

البشر يعاملوننا...

Turned up her nose at...

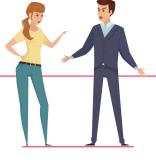
رفض شيء معين لأنه دون المستوى (مقرف) من وجهة نظرك

The girl turned up her nose at the food and said, " I'm not hungry, mom. "



Take ... out for a walk

You never take me out for a walk.





Do you want to go out for a walk?







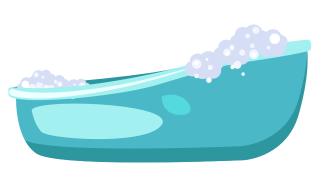


Frisbee

AMERICAN ENGLISH

Tub / Bathtub





Take a bath

Take a shower

We don't have a bath tub, but that doesn't mean I can't take a bath.



Sorry, I can't hear you. I'm taking a shower.











Litter box

AMERICAN ENGLISH







I'd rather do ... than doing ... أفضل كذا عن كذا

I'd rather go to the beach than staying home.

Independent (adjective) مستقل

Independence (noun) الاستقلال

Independence Day عيد الاستقلال



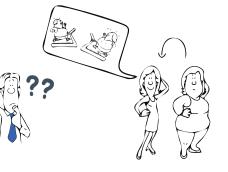






کم أنت بدين

"We need to lose weight," she said. He said, "What do you mean, 'we'"? She said, "I mean you and me."



I'm 20 pounds overweight, and so are you. We have to worry about diabetes, you know.

That happens to people who gain weight and don't exercise. He said, "We get plenty of exercise walking around the city."











"Remember walking up to the park last week?" She said, "Yes, but we only do that about once a month." We should stop eating ice cream, candy, cake, cookies, and cupcakes."

He said, "You forgot pie." Okay. Shall we start next month? She laughed and said, "Today's only the first day of the month! Let's start tomorrow." He agreed and put on his shoes.

She asked, "Where are you going?" He said, "Where do you think? I'm going shopping. We need to splurge on sweets all night, before the suffering starts tomorrow."









Explanation

What do you mean ...?

تستخدم للاستنكار (الاستفهام الانكاري)



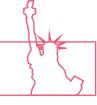


ENGLISH

Kilogram = 2.2 Pounds

I weigh 70 kilograms.

I weigh 154 pounds. I weigh 154 lb.



Centimeter	cm
Kilogram	kg
Pound	lb

Plenty of = a lot of = lots of

تستخدم مع الأسماء المفردة أو الجمع سواء كانت معدودة أو غير معدودة











AMERICAN **ENGLISH**



Cookies



Cupcake



Splurge on

ینفق بإسراف علی شیء معین



After having this bad phone for so many years, I decided to splurge on a very expensive IPhone.











جنون الإرتياب

He was a new employee. First day at the job, he introduced himself to one of his new coworkers. She was staring at her computer screen. She didn't look busy though. "Hello, my name is Don," he said with a smile on his face. She looked at him from top to bottom. Her face was blank. She hesitated for a moment and then said. "I don't have time to say hello," and then she went back to staring at her computer screen. Don stood still for a moment. He couldn't understand what just happened. Then he walked away. That was rude, he thought.

RUDE

FIRST DAY









RUDE No one has ever done that to me in my whole life. She doesn't have time to say hello? How long does it take to just say Hello?! He turned around to look at the woman again. I'll remember you, he thought. "Did I say hello wrong?" He asked his supervisor later. He was half-joking. "No, you said it fine." His supervisor replied. "Sandra's a little paranoid. She thinks every new employee might be after her job. She treats them like enemies." Well, that's certainly how I'll treat her from now on, Don thought.









Explanation

على الرغم من ذلك Though

نستخدمها عندما يكون السبب متناقض مع النتيجة

He's very nice to me, I don't like him though.



AMERICAN

ENGLISH



He goes to the gym 6 days a week, he has no muscles though.

Look at someone from top to bottom

ينظر لشخص ما من أعلى إلى أسفل.

Blank Vs Empty

blank للتعبير على أن شيء ما فارغ من الكتابة أو الرسوم

- A blank page.
- You sent me a blank document.
- The pictures came out blank.
- A blank face expression.









empty مع أي شيء ثلاثي الأبعاد مثل (صندوق - غرفة ...إلخ) التي يفترض بها أن تكون حاوية

- The room is empty.
- I opened the milk carton and was surprised that it was empty.













المستوى الثاني



يقف متجمداً في مكانه

If you see someone being bullied, don't stand still. Try to help



He thought = He thought to himself

تكلم بينه وبين نفسه (فكر مع نفسه)

Half-joking

AMERICAN

ENGLISH

يقول شيء بنبرة مضحكة ولكنه يتكلم جد You're fired

I'll remember you

لن أنسى لك هذا الموقف

after ...

تقاِل في اللهجة العامية بغرض أن شخص يريد أُخَّذ شيء (يخطفه) وهذا اُلشي ليس ملَّكه

> I don't like Jane, I think she's after my husband.



Paranoid

مصاب بجنون الإرتياب - العظمة









خطاب من متوفي ُ A couple were going on a vacation together but the wife had an emergency at work. So they agreed the husband would go as planned and his wife would meet him at the hotel the next day. When the husband got to the hotel, he cheeked in and thought he should send his wife a quick email letting her know he had arrived there ok. As he typed in her email address, he made a typo and his email was sent instead to an elderly mechanic's wife. It just so happened that her husband had sadly died just the day before.





When the old mechanic's wife checked her emails, she read the one from the vacationer. She let out an awful, loud scream, and fainted on the floor. At the sound of her falling, her family rushed into the room. They took care of her and then looked at her computer and saw this email on her screen:

Dearest Wife,

Just checked in to my room. Everything is prepared for your arrival tomorrow. By the way, it sure is hot down here.









المستوى الثاني



Holiday / Vacation

Holiday

اجازة/عطلة رسمية للدولة

Vacation

اجازة/عطلة خاصة بك (شخصيه)

Holiday عطلة شخصيه أو رسمية



المستقبل

(حاضر) Will

مستقبل لم يحدث بعد

(ماضی) Would

مستقبل حدث وانتهى

Misprint = Typo

خطأ مطبعى

رسمية Misprint

غير رسمية Typo

As

في أثناء - بينما

As he typed in her email address, he made a typo.

Old / Elderly

Old

للانسان والحماد

This is an old watch.

He went back to his old job.

old يمكن أن تأتي في أخر الجملة.

My grandmother is old.

Elderly

للانسان فقط

My grandmother is an elderly woman.

elderly لا يمكن أن تأتى في أخر الجملة.

My grandmother is elderly.









المستوى الثاني



من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

Sadly = Unfortunately

Sadly للأسف Unfortunately لسوء الحظ

Her husband had sadly die.

Unfortunately, there's nothing we can do about it.

It just so happened

بالصدفة البحتة...

It just so happened that I heard their entire plan.



في اجازة

Vacationer مأجز (مستجم) Holiday maker مأجز (مستجم)



At the sound of

بمجرد سماع صوت... (بسرعة وبدون أي تأخير...)

At the sound of the final whistle, our players started celebrating.

This ... = The following ...

They saw this email on her screen.

They saw the following email on her screen.









نصيحة الحمقي

On a mango tree in a jungle, there lived many birds. They were happy in their small nests. Before the onset of the rainy season, all the animals of the jungle repaired their homes. The birds also made their homes more secure. Many birds brought twigs and leaves and others wove their nests. "We should also store some food for our children," chirped on of the birds. And they collected food, until they had enough to see them through the rainy season. Soon the rain came. It was followed by thunder and lighting. All the animals and birds stayed in their homes. It continued raining for many days. One day, a monkey; wet from the rain came into the forest.









He sat on a branch, shivering with cold water dripping from its body. The poor monkey tried its best to find shelter, but in vain. The leaves were not enough to save him from the rain. "Brrr! It is so cold!" said the monkey. The birds were watching all this. They felt sorry for the monkey but there was little they could do for him. One of them said, "all of us prepared for the rainy season. If you had, you would not be in this piteous situation." "How dare you tell me what to do?" said the monkey, growling at the bird. The monkey angrily pounced on the bird's nest, tore it and threw it on the ground. The bird and her chicks were helpless. The poor bird thought, "Fools never value good advice. It is better not to advise them."









Onset = The beginning of something unpleasant.

The onset of winter.

AMERICAN ENGLISH

> بداية فصل الشتاء. (خبر غیر سار)

The beginning of winter.

بداية فصل الشتاء.

Secure - Safe

(محكم وغير قابل للتحريك) Secure

Safe (أي ليس في خطر) safe X dangerous

Rainy season

الموسم الممطر Rainy (صفة)

Twig

غصين



Branch



Weave - wove - woven

He is weaving a basket



Chirp

I love the sound of the birds chirping.











See ... through ...

يتجاوز شيء (يكون غالباً صعب)

It's a boring movie, but I have enough snacks to see me through it.



AMERICAN ENGLISH



He lost all of his money, so I gave him 50 dollars to see him through the month.

Shiver



Drop

A drop of water.



The water is dripping from the tap.



Vain

تافه - عديم الفائدة (قليلة الاستخدام)

In vain

عمل شيء بدون فائدة

I have been trying in vain to sleep for 3 hours now.











There was little they could do

= there was nothing they could do

How dare you...

كيف تجرء على... (لا تحتاج لحرف جر)

Growl

يخرج الصوت الغاضب (تستعمل غالباً مع الحيوانات)

Pounce on

ينقض على

Chick



Good advice

advice اسم غير معدود، لذلك لم نقم بوضع (a-an)

تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية بشكل صحيح عن طريق الضغط على



AMERICAN **ENGLISH**







1 of 3

الغراب الأحمق

Long ago, a hawk lived on the top of a hill. At the foot of the hill there was a foolish crow that lived in a tree and liked to imitate. The hawk would fly down everyday in search of food. Gifted with eyes that could see long distances, The hawk would spot his prey from the hill top and then fly down to pounce upon the prey. The crow watched the hawk thinking, "Hmmm. If the hawk can do that, I too can. I'll show that snob that he's not special. A few days later, as the hawk was circling in the air, the crow decided to do the same. A rabbit came out of the bushes and both birds saw it.









المستوى الثاني

2 of 3

Before the crow could move, the hawk swooped down, caught the rabbit in his strong sharp claws and flew away. "Swoosh!" was all the crow heard as the hawk disappeared in the sky with his prey. "Hmmm. That is no great skill," thought the crow, angrily. Next moment he spotted a big fat mouse coming out of a hole. Without wasting time, the crow swooped down. Like the hawk, he tried to catch the mouse in his claws. But the mouse saw the crow and moved away, the crow crashed against the hill. "ouch!" cried the crow in pain. Just then the hawk came flying down. "I hope, now you know it is not easy to hunt and it is not easy to imitate, either," said the hawk and flew away.











AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

عورس القصد

من قناة ذا اميركان انجلش

المستوى الثاني

3 of 3

At the foot of the ...

تشير إلى قاعدة أي شيئ منتصب ومرتفع

- At the foot of the mountain.
- At the foot of the building.
- At the foot of the tree.

Would = Used to

تعبر عن عادة متكررة في الماضي

As a little boy, I would come home from school very hungry.

Imitate

His style was imitated by many other people.

Spot

You know, I heard in the news a bobcat has been spotted in her neighborhood.

يصطدم بعنف Crash against

The waves are crashing against the mountain rocks.

Soaring



Swoop















صياد الطيور

Once upon a time, there lived two pigeons. They were husband and wife. They spend their day looking for food and in the evening they would come and rest on their favorite tree in the forest. One evening, the wife returned home early. She was waiting for her husband, when suddenly it started to rain. She began to worry. "Where are you, my dear? You never stay out so late," she whispered to herself. Just then she saw a bird-catcher coming towards her. He had a pigeon in his cage. It was her husband. "Oh no, what shall I do now?" I wish I can help my husband," she said. She desperately tried to distract the bird-catcher by flapping her wings, but all in vain. Soon, it stopped raining. "Brrr! It is so cold," said the bird-catcher.





His clothes were wet. He decided to sit under the same tree where the two pigeons lived. The poor wife sat by her husband's cage crying. The husband said. "Do not feel sad, dear. We now have a guest. This man is shivering and hungry. He needs your help." Hearing this, the wife flew around getting dry twigs. She made a fire for the bird-catcher. Then she looked at the bird-catcher and said, "You are our guest, since I have no food to offer, I will jump into this fire. In a few minutes I will become an edible meal for you. You can eat me." The bird-catcher was overwhelmed by the hospitality of the humble pigeon couple. He at once stopped the wife jumping into the fire. He opened the cage and set the husband free. "I have been cruel and selfish. I will never trap any bird in my net again," said the bird-catcher and went away. The two pigeons were happy to be reunited.









Pigeons

AMERICAN ENGLISH

> Many parks advise visitors not to feed pigeons.



Return

Return = Go back

Return back X

Would

They would come and rest on their favorite tree in the forest.

would

(تعبر عن عادة متكررة)

Desperately

She desperately tried to distract the bird-catcher.

(للمبالغة في التشديد على الفعل)

Bird-catcher = Bird hunter

Bird-catcher

(يقوم بصيد الطيور حية)

Bird hunter

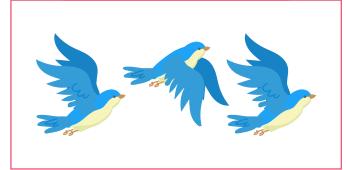
(بقوم بقتل الطبور لصيدها)

Distract

Don't let people distract you from achieving your goals.



Flapping wings











Shivering

AMERICAN ENGLISH



Overwhelmed

I'm overwhelmed by your kindness.

Humble

Humble = Modest











المستوى الثانى



العنكبوت المخادع

When Mother hyena was away, Anansis, the spider, went to her den and informed her cubs that he was their <u>uncle</u>, For-you-all. "Wake me" up when your mother brings food," he said and curled up in a corner to sleep. Shortly after, mother hyena came with meat which she gave to her cubs, saying: "This is for you all." The cubs woke up the spider and gave him the meat which he devoured. Mother hyena brought meat twice more, on each occasion saying, "This is for you all," while handing over the food to her cubs. Each time, the cubs dutifully woke up Anansis and gave him the meat. In the evening started crying for food. "Still hungry after all the meat I gave you?" she asked, surprised. 🖗 🧥 🤼













of the state of "Uncle ate it all!" they wailed. The spider, realizing that it was time to run, darted out of the cave and sprinted away. "That's Uncle For-you-all!" shouted the cubs. "Is he!" said their mother, angrily, and bounced after the spider. Anansis rushed into a dog's house and sat beside him. "I've just finished eating," said the dog. "I've nothing to offer you." "That's all right," said the spider, "I've already eaten. That's why I'm here." The hyena came in just then. "Which of you is the idiot I was chasing!" she demanded. The spider pointed to the dog. "He has been running," he said. "See how he's panting with his tongue hanging out?" The hyena pounced on the dog and when he ran away, she 🧼 followed him. Uncle Spider, knowing that it would be a long time before the dog got back, stretched out on his bed for a short nap.









المستوى الثاني

حلقة



AMERICAN ENGLISH





Curl



Curly hair



Curl up



Cub

















Uncle

- My uncle from my father's side.

AMERICAN ENGLISH

- My uncle from my mother's side.

Shortly after

Shortly after = Soon

Devour



Occasion

A particular time when something happens

Dart (verb)

To run fast suddenly













Pounce

AMERICAN **ENGLISH**

Bounce

ینقض/یهجم علی

ش - ىقفز

Ask

ىسأل

"Why didn't you send the email yesterday?" He asked.



Demand

بسأل من خلال نفوذ أو سلطة

"Why didn't you send the email yesterday?" He demanded.



Next to

Beside

أكثر استخداما

للكلام الرسمي أو ذو الطابع القصصي

Pant



Stretch







